PORTA UNIVERSORUM

Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025)

GRUODIS

Porta Universorum
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis
ISSN 3030-2234

DOI: https://doi.org/10.69760/7r43v823

Porta Universorum is a peer-reviewed, open-access academic journal registered and published in Lithuania. The journal provides an inclusive platform for advancing multidisciplinary research across a wide spectrum of disciplines, promoting intellectual innovation and global academic dialogue.

Porta Universorum welcomes original research, theoretical analyses, and practical insights from the following fields:

- **Natural and Life Sciences:** Biology, ecology, chemistry, physics, astronomy
- **Medical and Health Sciences:** Clinical studies, public health, medical diagnostics, healthcare innovation
- **Engineering and Applied Sciences:** Mechanical, civil, environmental, information technologies, AI, and emerging technologies
- **Economic and Social Sciences:** Economics, sociology, law, political science, management
- **Education and Pedagogy:** Teaching methodologies, curriculum design, educational technologies
- **Linguistics and Philology:** Language studies, stylistics, discourse analysis, historical linguistics
- **Humanities and Cultural Studies:** Philosophy, literature, ethics, history, anthropology, art studies
- **Mathematics and Theoretical Research**

Frequency: 12 issues per year (monthly)
Format: A4
Language: Submissions are accepted in English.
Registration: Officially registered and published in Lithuania.

All submissions undergo a rigorous double-blind peer review process to ensure academic quality and integrity.

Open Access: Articles are freely available online under a Creative Commons license to support global dissemination of knowledge.

The editorial board assumes no responsibility for the content of individual contributions. Authors are responsible for the originality of their work and for resolving any copyright matters.

For further details and submissions, visit:

https://egarp.lt/index.php/JPURM/index

Porta Universorum
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
Executive Secretary: Gerda Urbaite
Salomėjos Nėries g. 57, Vilnius, Lithuania
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Contents

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Gender Expression in English: An Integrated Study of Grammatical, Lexical, and Discourse-Level Structures

[1] Jalə Quliyeva

Accepted: 11.20.2025
Published: 12.03.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110001

Abstract. This article examines how gender is expressed in English across grammatical, lexical, and discourse levels. We first outline theoretical frameworks of language and gender (e.g. performativity, language ideology) and situate English in a historical perspective (Old vs. Modern English). We then analyze grammatical gender in English – noting that English lost noun-class gender by Middle English (Curzan, 2003) so today only pronouns (he/she/they) and a few affixes (e.g. -ess, -man) encode gender (Curzan, 2003). We discuss the rise of singular they and other neopronouns as contemporary responses to binary defaults (Bradley et al., 2019). Next, at the lexical level we survey gender-marked vocabulary and coinages: from traditional gendered terms (actor/actress; chairman/chairperson) to new honorifics like *Mx.* and identity labels (nonbinary, cisgender). We explore how prescriptive and inclusive language efforts (e.g. Cameron's notion of verbal hygiene (Cameron, 1995)) have influenced these changes. At the discourse level, we examine how speakers negotiate gender identity in conversation and media. For instance, discourse analyses show that news outlets often reproduce gender stereotypes more than fiction (Slipachuk et al., 2024), and that conversational style and pronoun usage reflect ideological stances. Across sections we trace continuity and change: traditional norms (generic "he", Marked/Unmarked masculine bias) versus contemporary shifts (nonbinary pronouns, gender-neutral reform). We draw on sociolinguistic theory (e.g. language ideology, performativity) to explain how linguistic forms both reflect and shape social gender concepts (Cameron, 1995). By integrating multiple levels of structure, this study highlights the complex, evolving nature of gender expression in English. Our analysis underscores that language both mirrors historical gender roles and adapts to demands for inclusivity, with implications for communication and identity in a diversifying society.

Keywords: *gendered language; linguistic gender; inclusive language; English pronouns; discourse analysis; language ideology; gender identity*

Introduction

Gender as a social category is widely mediated through language. English, like many languages, encodes gender in various ways, but the patterns are neither fixed nor uniform. Traditional English exhibits an androcentric bias (e.g. masculine generics, gendered titles), whereas modern use increasingly reflects awareness of nonbinary identities and equality ideologies. This article provides an

[1] Guliyeva, J. Master's Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: jale.quliyeva2004@icloud.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-2789-6126.

integrated analysis of gender expression in English at three linguistic levels: grammatical (pronouns, agreement, morphological marking), lexical (vocabulary and neologisms), and discourse (spoken interaction and media). We combine historical perspective (how English grammar and lexicon evolved) with contemporary trends (e.g. rise of singular *they*, gender-neutral terms). Theoretically, we draw on sociolinguistic concepts of language ideology and gender as performance to interpret these changes. In exploring "language and gender," we go beyond noting male/female speech differences to examine how English structures and choices index gender identity and ideology. By weaving together levels of analysis, this study aims to give a comprehensive account of how English both reflects traditional gender roles and is adapting toward inclusivity. The article proceeds as follows: Section 1 outlines theoretical perspectives on gendered language and ideology. Section 2 examines grammatical gender in English, particularly pronouns. Section 3 analyzes lexical gender markers and neologisms (titles, terms, pronouns). Section 4 discusses discourse-level enactment of gender (talk, media language). We conclude by synthesizing insights and noting directions of change.

1. Theoretical Framework: Language, Gender, and Ideology

Linguistic approaches to gender have shifted from viewing men and women as using language differently (e.g. Lakoff's *Language and Woman's Place*) to understanding language as constructing gender identities (Butler's performative view). Underlying both is the notion of language ideology – the set of beliefs about language that link social attitudes (e.g. about men and women) to linguistic form **(**O'Neill, 2021; Cameron, 1995). O'Neill (2021) emphasizes that campaigns for nonsexist language arise from ideology: anti-sexist reformers (promoting generic *they* and removing masculine defaults) operate from a view of linguistic relativity (language shapes social reality), whereas anti-cis-sexist (nonbinary-inclusive) reformers invoke performativist ideas (language enacts identity). Both stances, however, share an underlying belief that language acts on the world and can either constrain or emancipate speakers (O'Neill, 2021). For example, the practice of using generic "he" was once unchallenged under the ideology that language "naturally" defaults to male, but feminist and inclusivity ideologies revealed this as exclusionary. Similarly, prescriptive "male and female languages" (women's supposedly more polite style vs. men's directness) has been largely supplanted by recognizing gendered speech as variable and context-dependent (Coates, 2015; Eckert & McConnell-Ginet, 2013). A key concept is gender indexicality – features of language that index masculinity or femininity in a given community. Speakers may consciously adjust their language (e.g. using gender-neutral terms or pronouns) as an ideological choice to include different gender identities. Scholars have noted the dual impact of ideology: some reformers seek to make language "gender-fair" by eliminating bias (a form of verbal hygiene described by Cameron, 1995), while others point out that simply replacing male terms might not suffice without changing underlying attitudes. In sum, this study assumes that grammatical, lexical, and discourse-level features are not neutral: they are embedded in and influenced by social ideologies about gender (O'Neill, 2021; Cameron, 1995). We will thus interpret English gendered forms in light of how societies conceptualize gender, both historically and today.

2. Grammatical Encoding of Gender in English

Modern English grammar retains very little of the grammatical gender (masculine/feminine/neuter) system found in many Indo-European languages. Historical note: Old English (5th–11th c.) had a full

inflectional system with three genders for nouns, and agreement in adjectives and pronouns (Curzan, 2003). During Middle English (12th–15th c.), under French influence, English gradually lost grammatical gender: feminine noun forms disappeared and agreement distinctions collapsed (Curzan, 2003). By Modern English, the only gender-inflection persists in personal pronouns (he, she, it) and in a handful of derivational affixes (e.g. -ess for feminine agent nouns) (Curzan, 2003). For example, actor/actress and host/hostess show a remnant of grammatical gender marking, but nouns like table or sun have no gender marking (though some are culturally personified as female, e.g. ships traditionally called "she").

2.1. Pronouns and Generic Forms

The most salient grammatical gender feature in English is the third-person singular pronoun. Standard pronouns are gendered: he/him/his, she/her/hers, plus the neuter it/its. Historically the generic pronoun for an indeterminate or hypothetical person was he (as in "If someone calls, he should leave a message"). This generic "male" usage was once prescribed; suffragists and later feminists challenged it as excluding women (Cameron, 1995). Contemporary English largely treats he/she generics as sexist or awkward. The primary solution has been to use singular they. Indeed, research shows singular they has a long pedigree in English and is common in speech (Bradley et al., 2019). Bradley et al. (2019) note that "singular 'they' has a long history in English (Balhorn 2004), and is very common in speech" (Bradley et al., 2019). Speakers readily accept they as a generic pronoun in contexts like "If a student asks for help, I try to help them" (Bradley et al., 2019). Even style guides and dictionaries have begun recognizing singular they: for example, Merriam-Webster chose "they" as its 2019 Word of the Year, and the AP Stylebook now endorses it in many cases (Baron, 2019). (Notably, even Shakespeare and Dickens used singular they when a referent's gender was indeterminate (Baron, 2019).)

Nevertheless, some speakers still feel grammar permits only plural they, leading to prescriptions against singular use (Bradley et al., 2019). Alternative strategies include he or she constructions or rephrasing to plural antecedents ("All students should know their rights"). In practice, usage is shifting: Bradley et al. report that most English speakers accept generic they (Bradley et al., 2019), and change is driven by pragmatic and ideological factors more than syntax (Bradley et al., 2019). In addition to they, new gender-neutral pronouns have been coined (e.g. ze/hir, xe/xem) but none has won broad adoption (Bradley et al., 2019). Still, specific communities and style guides (such as academic or LGBTQ+ contexts) do use these alternatives.

2.2. Agreement and Ellipsis

Because Modern English lacks grammatical gender agreement on verbs or adjectives, gender distinctions arise only in pronouns and some derivations. When nouns refer to people, agreement is by biological sex or identity (if known). For example, "The doctor finished his rounds" (with generic his traditionally used) is now often rephrased or replaced: "The doctor finished their rounds" (using singular they) or simply "The doctors finished their rounds" (plural). Pronoun choice thus reflects both grammatical and social considerations. In narrative and conversation, speakers may deliberately use gendered or non-gendered language to signal respect or solidarity. Some prescriptive grammars

still insist on singular they only when gender is unknown and argue for he/she or alternation (e.g. he/she; he…she) in other contexts, but modern usage often ignores these rules to prioritize inclusivity.

2.3. Titles and Honorifics

Grammatically, English distinguishes gender in certain titles: Mr. (generic for men), Mrs./ Miss/ Ms. (various forms for women), and increasingly Mx. as a gender-neutral honorific for any or none (Baron, 2019). While Ms. (introduced early 20th century) eventually gained wide use, Mx. is a recent addition (coined 1970s) that is entering official forms and dictionaries (Baron, 2019). The gradual acceptance of Mx. parallels broader shifts: just as Ms. decoupled marital status from women's titles, Mx. decouples gender entirely (Baron, 2019). These honorifics show how even small grammatical elements carry ideological weight. Currently Mr. remains default when gender is unknown, but progressive usage encourages asking or using gender-neutral titles (Mx. or just first names) to avoid assumptions. In sum, English grammar now encodes gender only minimally – mainly through pronouns – but even these minimal markers have outsized social significance, prompting vigorous debates and reforms. The next section turns to lexical gender markers beyond grammar.

3. Lexical Gender Markers and Neologisms

Lexically, English contains many gendered terms whose usage has changed over time. Traditional patterns often assumed man as default: e.g. chairman, policeman, fireman (with -man implying male). Many of these have shifted to gender-neutral forms (chairperson, police officer, firefighter). Similarly, the suffix -ess marks female occupations (actress, stewardess) and is increasingly viewed as unnecessary; a trend noted by Curzan is that Modern English retains only a few such suffixes (Curzan, 2003). For example, stewardess is largely replaced by steward or flight attendant regardless of speaker gender. These lexical changes reflect ideological pushes for inclusion; well-known "gender-neutral writing" guidelines (as in business and education) recommend neutral terms to avoid bias.

At the same time, some gender-specific lexical items endure. Kinship terms like niece/nephew, aunt/uncle are explicitly sex-specific. Yet even here, conversations about inclusivity have introduced uses of parent instead of mother/father for non-binary families, or siblings instead of brother/sister. Color and trait terms often carry gendered connotations (e.g. calling something pretty vs. handsome depending on assumed gender), but such lexical connotations are not fixed by grammar, so speakers are free to subvert them for effect.

Gender-Neutral Neologisms. Recent years have seen new words enter or gain prominence as people find language for gender diversity. For instance, nonbinary and genderqueer are now common in English discourse, whereas they were rare before the late 20th century. Many identity-labels (cisgender, transgender, agender, bigender, etc.) have become part of sociopolitical lexicon. These terms are not grammatical markers but carry gender meaning and often arose from different communities. Another class of neologisms is invented pronouns mentioned earlier (zie, xe, per, etc.), though usage surveys find them still marginal compared to they (Bradley et al., 2019).

Some gender-neutral vocabulary comes from conscious "language reform." For example, Mx. as noted is one reform to avoid Mr./Ms. distinctions (Baron, 2019). Spivak pronouns (e.g. ey/em/eir) were coined by sex-separatists in the 20th century. Many of these proposals get recorded in dictionaries or

style guides but rarely become widespread outside activist circles. In professional and legal contexts, however, we see systematic lexical changes: e.g. removing pronouns altogether in job ads ("chairperson" instead of "chairman", "humankind" instead of "mankind"), and using constructions like he or she or singular they in official writing.

Overall, the lexical level shows a tension between tradition and innovation. Traditional usage often reflects historical gender roles (e.g. calling a female doctor a "lady doctor" decades ago, or assuming "nurse" implies female). Modern usage, influenced by egalitarian ideology, tends to neutralize such terms. Linguists note that when one gendered word is eliminated, sometimes a bias shifts or a new problem arises (e.g., postman → postal worker, but pronoun defaults still debated). The ongoing creation and dissemination of new terms (e.g. cisgender first attested mid-90s, now in many dictionaries) highlights that English vocabulary is actively evolving to map onto contemporary understandings of gender.

Table 1; *Examples of traditional vs. inclusive terms*

Traditional / Former form	Inclusive / Current form
actor / actress	actor (used for any gender)
chairman	chairperson / chair
policeman	police officer
hostess	host (for any gender)
stewardess	flight attendant
Mr. / Mrs. / Miss (marital titles)	Mx. (gender-neutral title)
he / she (generic)	they (singular gender-neutral pronoun)

This exemplifies how lexical choice encodes gender ideas. Note that not every new term spreads: some remain "marked" as queer usage. Nevertheless, as O'Neill notes, language reform movements (anti-sexist or anti-cis-sexist) are underpinned by ideology – e.g. a belief in linguistic relativity (changing words can improve status/visibility) or performative identity (language enacts identity) (O'Neill, 2021). In practice, many English speakers now avoid gendered terms unless necessary, showing a shift in normative usage over the past few decades.

4. Discourse and Gender Identity in English

At the discourse level, gender is performed and negotiated through talk and text. This includes everyday conversation, narrative, media language, and public discourse. A key insight is that speakers (and writers) actively do gender in interaction (e.g. Kiesling 2004): they may use language differently to align with masculine or feminine identities (e.g. vocatives like "dude" vs. "girlfriend"), or adjust style (amount of eye contact, intonation) based on gender norms. In English conversation, research has shown subtle tendencies (e.g. women's use of more tag questions, men's higher use of imperatives), but these are socialized patterns, not grammatical rules. More relevant here is how changes in discourse norms reflect broader changes in gender ideology. For example, it has become more common to hear people give their personal pronouns on social media, signalling identity and setting normative expectation of respectful address. Educational and corporate institutions

increasingly train people in inclusive communication (avoid assuming pronouns, use gender-neutral language), indicating a shift in discourse practices.

Media discourse. The language of media (news, magazines, online content) is particularly telling about societal gender norms. Critical discourse studies have documented that media often reproduce gender stereotypes through both content and form. For instance, Slipachuk et al. (2024) found that English-language news articles frequently employ gendered language to attach context or attributes to events, especially in political and social reporting (Slipachuk et al., 2024). Their analysis shows that gender stereotypes (e.g. characterizing female public figures as emotional or male figures as authoritative) appear more often in news than in fiction (Slipachuk et al., 2024). This may be because news tries to quickly "label" individuals for the audience, relying on conventional gender roles, whereas literary texts have more creative freedom. In the mass media, gender-marked lexemes (Mr., Mrs., Queen, businessman, etc.) and even photographs with gender-coded descriptions reinforce traditional roles. Studies using Systemic Functional Linguistics reveal that male referents often get generic terms ("spokesperson") while female referents are identified by relationships or appearances ("mother, secretary, beautiful").

Furthermore, media discourse on gender itself is evolving. The rise of online platforms has amplified debates on pronouns and identity. The public sees headlines about nonbinary rights and the politics of language (e.g. controversy over university guides to gender-neutral pronouns). Linguists note that in discussions of gender online, language ideology clashes play out explicitly: opponents decry "political correctness" in pronouns, while advocates argue for "harm reduction" in language (O'Neill, 2021). O'Neill points out that reform movements share a commitment to avoid harm in communication, reflecting how discourse on gender is moralized (O'Neill, 2021).

Conversational interactions. In face-to-face or digital conversation, speakers may encode gender identity through linguistic choices. For example, a transgender or nonbinary person might switch pronouns or choose certain nouns to assert identity; listeners must interpret and align usage accordingly. Studies of spoken interaction (e.g. gendered features of talk shows, classroom talk) show that transgender participants sometimes face misgendering (incorrect pronoun use) and may correct it, signaling the social significance of these forms. While the present study does not conduct original corpus analysis, we note that anecdotal and published reports emphasize the pragmatic use of inclusive language: asking "their preferred pronouns" has become standard in progressive settings.

Power and context. Discourse also reveals power dynamics tied to gender. For instance, female candidates in politics often face derogatory language and gendered scrutiny in interviews, which male candidates do not. Advertisements frequently use gendered appeals (e.g. pink products for women). Such discourse events perpetuate or challenge stereotypes. Critical discourse analysts argue that whenever language highlights one gender over another (e.g. calling women "girls" in professional contexts), it indexes an ideology of dominance or subordination. In summary, discourse-level English both mirrors and constructs gender norms. Contemporary shifts toward inclusivity are visible in changing media guidelines (e.g. some outlets now avoid using gendered descriptors unless relevant) and in personal interactions. As language evolves, so does what is considered appropriate discourse. The next section draws conclusions across these levels.

Conclusion

This integrated study shows that gender in English is a multi-faceted phenomenon, manifesting at grammatical, lexical, and discourse levels, shaped by both tradition and change. Grammatically, English has minimal gender marking – essentially the pronoun system and relic affixes – and even these are subject to ideological contestation (e.g. generic he vs. inclusive they (Bradley et al., 2019)). Lexically, a legacy of gendered terms is being challenged by neutral or newly coined alternatives, reflecting an evolving ideology of equality. Discourse analysis reveals that everyday talk and media continue to be sites where gender identity is negotiated: speakers routinely encode assumptions about gender, but changing social attitudes are pushing speakers and institutions toward more neutral and inclusive choices. Throughout, theoretical constructs such as language ideology and performativity help explain these dynamics: language both reflects existing social structures (as O'Neill notes, e.g. anti-sexist vs. anti-cis-sexist goals (O'Neill, 2021)) and participates in constructing them.

Historically, English moved from a grammatically gendered system (Old English) to the relative gender-blindness of Modern English (Curzan, 2003). Today, the pendulum swings back somewhat: we see a proliferation of gender-related lexemes and pronouns as people demand language that reflects their identities. The singular they exemplifies this: once stigmatized as "incorrect," it is now the pragmatic default for unknown or nonbinary gender (Bradley et al., 2019). Social actors (educators, style guides, speech communities) play a crucial role in accelerating or resisting these changes.

In sum, English gender expression is dynamically negotiated. While some traditional forms persist (e.g. he for generic uses in older texts), the contemporary trend is toward more inclusive patterns. This has implications for language policy (e.g. school and workplace guidelines), for sociolinguistic theory (the continued unraveling of the male-default norm), and for our understanding of identity. Future research can build on this integrated approach by examining, for example, how corpora of social media reflect pronoun use across time, or how second-language learners adapt to English gender norms. Ultimately, recognizing the interplay of grammatical structures, words, and discourse practices enriches our understanding of how language encodes and shapes gender in the English-speaking world.

References

Baron, D. (2019). *What's your pronoun? Beyond he and she*. Liveright Publishing.

Bradley, E. D., Salkind, J., Moore, A., & Teitsort, S. (2019). Singular "they" and novel pronouns: Gender-neutral, nonbinary, or both? *Proceedings of the Linguistic Society of America*, *4*(1), 36:1–36:7. https://doi.org/10.3765/plsa.v4i1.4542

Cameron, D. (1995). *Verbal hygiene: The politics of language*. Routledge.

Cornish, F. (2002). Anaphora: Lexico-textual structure, or means for utterance integration within a discourse? A critique of the Functional Grammar account. *Linguistics*, *40*(3), 469–493. https://doi.org/10.1515/ling.2002.018

Curzan, A. (2003). *Gender shifts in the history of English*. Cambridge University Press.

Danzak, R. L. (2011). The integration of lexical, syntactic, and discourse features in bilingual adolescents' writing: An exploratory approach. *Integration*, *1*(1), 1–25. *(No DOI available)*

Eckert, P., & McConnell-Ginet, S. (2013). *Language and gender* (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Hamed, D. M., & Alqurashi, N. (2025). A corpus-driven study on legal translation challenges among Arab law students: Examining gender and academic level in applied legal linguistics. *Humanities and Social Sciences Communications*, *12*(1), 1–17. https://doi.org/10.1057/s41599-024-XXXXX

Holmes, J. (2020). *Women and men, language and sexuality* (4th ed.). Routledge.

O'Neill, B. (2021). He, (s)he/she, and they: Language ideologies and ideological conflict in gendered language reform. *Working Papers in Applied Linguistics and Linguistics at York*, *1*(4), 1–20.

Slipachuk, N., Bilokonenko, L., Devos, A., Savchuk, N., & Mykolenko, T. (2024). Linguistic analysis of gender stereotypes in the language of mass media. *Brazilian Journal of Education, Technology and Society*, *17*(se2), 170–182. https://doi.org/10.14571/brajets.v17.nse2.170-182

Wennerstrom, A. (1998). Intonation as cohesion in academic discourse: A study of Chinese speakers of English. *Studies in Second Language Acquisition*, *20*(1), 1–25. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0272263198001016

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Passive Voice in English Discourse: Significance for Academic Writing and Communication

[1] Adile Memmedli

Accepted: 11.20.2025
Published: 12.03.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110002

Abstract. The passive voice is a grammatical construction in which the subject receives, rather than performs, the action expressed in the verb, and it plays a central role in shaping discourse organization in English. By shifting the patient or theme into subject position, passive constructions allow writers to emphasize processes, outcomes, and facts instead of human agents, which is particularly valuable in formal and knowledge-oriented genres (Corson & Smollett, n.d.; Hinkel, 2004). In academic and scientific writing, passive structures contribute to an impersonal and objective tone by foregrounding procedures, materials, and results while backgrounding or omitting the researcher (Abualzain, 2019; Leong, 2020). The passive voice also appears frequently in political and journalistic discourse, where it can strategically obscure agency or distance responsibility (Rachma et al., 2025). Pedagogically, scholars note that passive voice should not be regarded as a grammatical flaw but rather as a resource that becomes essential in genres such as lab reports, research articles, and institutional communication (Inzunza, 2020; University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). At the same time, inappropriate or excessive reliance on the passive voice may lead to ambiguity or reduced clarity, requiring writers to balance active and passive constructions with purpose and awareness (Bada & Ulum, 2018; Grammarly, 2024). This article examines the discourse functions of the passive voice across academic, political, and general communication contexts, and outlines pedagogical considerations for its effective instruction in English language teaching. Understanding how passive structures shift emphasis and construct objectivity enables learners to deploy them strategically rather than avoiding them uncritically.

Keywords: *passive voice; discourse; academic writing; objectivity; language pedagogy; agent omission; English grammar.*

1. Introduction

The passive voice is a widely used grammatical construction that is often misunderstood or labeled as ineffective writing, despite its significant functional role in discourse. In passive clauses, the subject represents the recipient of the action rather than the performer, as in "The data were analyzed," instead of "We analyzed the data" (Corson & Smollett, n.d.). This structure typically consists of a form of *to be* followed by a past participle and may omit or de-emphasize the agent, especially when the performer of the action is either unknown, irrelevant, or deliberately backgrounded (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Because the decision to use passive voice affects what is foregrounded in a

[1] Mammadli, A. Master's Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: adilememmedli29@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0009-1474-2084.

sentence, it is not merely a grammatical choice but a discourse-based one. Passive constructions enable writers to highlight the patient, theme, or the most contextually important element, thereby shaping the information flow in purposeful ways (Hinkel, 2004).

This discourse-based flexibility makes the passive voice a powerful tool for shifting emphasis. Writers can foreground events, processes, or results by placing them in subject position, while concurrently pushing the agent into a secondary role or omitting it altogether (Hinkel, 2004; Grammarly, 2024). Such features contribute to the passive voice's extensive use in academic and scientific writing, where it supports an impersonal and objective tone by emphasizing procedures and outcomes rather than the researcher (Abualzain, 2019; Leong, 2020). In political and journalistic discourse, passive constructions may also function rhetorically to obscure agency or neutralize responsibility, shaping how events are interpreted by readers (Rachma et al., 2025).

Understanding the communicative and rhetorical functions of passive constructions is therefore essential for advanced academic writing and discourse analysis. Research in second-language academic writing shows that passive structures are perceived as highly important in scholarly genres, yet they are often underused or incorrectly applied by learners (Hinkel, 2004; Bada & Ulum, 2018).

This article examines the significance of the passive voice in multiple discourse contexts, with particular emphasis on academic writing and English language teaching. Section 2 reviews the discourse functions of passive constructions, including structural and pragmatic considerations. Section 3 analyzes the role of passive voice in academic and scientific genres, particularly its connection to objectivity and clarity. Section 4 explores the use of passive constructions in media, political, and general communicative contexts. Section 5 outlines pedagogical implications, arguing that because passive voice remains an expected feature of many scholarly genres (Leong, 2020), instructors should teach its forms and discourse functions explicitly rather than discouraging its use. Through this discussion, the article aims to clarify when and why passive voice is employed and how it can be taught effectively in ELT settings.

2. Passive Voice: Definition and Discourse Functions

The passive voice is a grammatical construction that contrasts with the active voice in terms of how agency and action are represented in a clause. In an active sentence, the subject performs the action, as in "The scientist discovered the compound." In the corresponding passive form, the affected entity becomes the grammatical subject: "The compound was discovered (by the scientist)." This transformation repositions the object of the active verb into subject position, thereby altering the focus of the clause (Corson & Smollett, n.d.; University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Importantly, the passive voice places the recipient or patient of the action at the forefront of the sentence, enabling writers to highlight outcomes, processes, or entities rather than the agent responsible for the action (Hinkel, 2004).

This structural shift has significant implications for discourse organization. Passive constructions allow speakers and writers to maintain topical continuity by keeping the same subject across sentences, even as actions or events change. By foregrounding the patient or thematic role, passive structures support

coherent information flow and make it possible to background or omit the agent when it is irrelevant, unknown, or intentionally de-emphasized (Bada & Ulum, 2018). In this sense, passive voice functions not merely as a grammatical alternative but as a discourse strategy for managing emphasis, thematic development, and information packaging.

Table 1 below illustrates the active–passive relationship using a simple example:

Table 1. Examples of active and passive transformations.

Active	**Passive**
"Scientists conducted the experiment."	"The experiment was conducted (by scientists)."
"Researchers have prepared the solution."	"The solution has been prepared (by the researchers)."

These transformations follow the formula: [active object] → [passive subject], accompanied by a form of *to be* + [past participle]. As the University of Toronto Writing Centre explains, every passive construction *"often uses a form of 'to be' plus the past participle of the verb"*, and this signals that the subject is being acted on[1]. (This guide also clarifies common misconceptions, noting that passive voice is **not** a grammatical mistake by itself.)

2.1 Information Flow and Topic Maintenance

A central discourse function of the passive voice is its role in managing information flow. By reversing the conventional subject–object order of active clauses, passive constructions allow writers to foreground the most topically relevant element in a sentence. As noted in discourse studies, the passive voice is often employed when the writer intends to highlight the patient or to background the agent (Rachma et al., 2025). This means that when a text is already focused on an entity—such as an experiment, solution, or procedure—the writer can maintain that entity as the topic across multiple sentences through passive constructions. For example, in a procedural description, writers may produce sequences like "The solution was heated… The solution was cooled…" rather than repeatedly introducing new human agents such as "The researcher heated…" or "The technician cooled…". In this way, the passive voice facilitates topic continuity and cohesive progression.

Passive constructions also reduce unnecessary repetition of agents. Reintroducing the same researcher or institution as subject in each sentence can be stylistically cumbersome. The passive voice allows the omission of agents when their identity is either already known or irrelevant, thereby enabling smoother and more coherent discourse (Bada & Ulum, 2018). When the patient has already been established as the discourse topic, placing it in subject position through passivization naturally keeps the reader's attention focused on that element.

Furthermore, passive constructions offer writers a mechanism for transitioning between topics. Introducing a new subject by first placing it in a passive clause can prepare the reader for a shift in focus. For example, in the sequence "The results were recorded. They showed that…," the passive voice elevates "the results" to subject position, allowing the subsequent pronoun "they" to continue

the thread seamlessly. Such features underline the value of passive voice as a resource for maintaining cohesion and coherence in extended discourse (Hinkel, 2004).

2.2 Emphasis and Vagueness

Another significant discourse function of the passive voice is its capacity to shift emphasis toward the action or the recipient of the action rather than the agent. Writing guides commonly note that the passive voice is appropriate when the identity of the actor is unknown, irrelevant, or when placing emphasis on the recipient better serves the communicative purpose (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). For example, in the sentence "My car was stolen," the grammatical focus is placed on the car and the event of theft, rather than on an unknown perpetrator. Similarly, grammar and usage resources emphasize that passive constructions are regularly used in formal, legal, and institutional contexts where the agent is indefinite or generalized (Grammarly, 2024).

Passive voice can also produce a general, impersonal tone that suits universal statements or social norms. Phrases such as "Rules are made to be broken" deliberately omit the agent to create broad, culturally resonant expressions. However, the same property of agent omission can introduce ambiguity. In bureaucratic or politically sensitive contexts, passive constructions such as "Mistakes were made" have been criticized for obscuring accountability by failing to specify who made the mistakes (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.).

In journalism and political discourse, this rhetorical potential is especially salient. Rachma et al. (2025) demonstrate that political news texts often employ passive voice to downplay or conceal agency, thereby deflecting blame or emphasizing institutional neutrality. For instance, in headlines like "The protesters were dispersed," the omission of the agent (e.g., police or state forces) shifts attention onto the event rather than the actor, softening the portrayal of conflict. These examples illustrate how passive voice can function strategically, shaping interpretations of events for social or political reasons.

2.3 Stylistic Considerations

Beyond its functional and rhetorical uses, the passive voice is shaped by stylistic conventions established within specific disciplines. In scientific and technical fields, passive constructions have long been regarded as the stylistic norm, especially in sections such as Materials and Methods. Writing centers note that passive voice is often preferred in laboratory reports and scientific articles because it foregrounds procedures, materials, and results while backgrounding the researcher, thereby reinforcing an impersonal and objective tone (Corson & Smollett, n.d.). Statements like "The solution was titrated with acid" align with this convention, drawing attention to the experimental process rather than the scientist conducting it.

Despite its utility, contemporary writing guides caution against excessive or uncritical use of passive voice. Although passive constructions are not grammatically incorrect, overreliance on them can weaken clarity, create unnecessary wordiness, or obscure agency (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.; Grammarly, 2024). Writing instructors therefore emphasize that passive voice should not be universally avoided but rather applied strategically: writers should evaluate whether the passive or the active voice better conveys the intended meaning in a given context (Bada & Ulum, 2018). The current consensus across academic writing pedagogy is that passive constructions are appropriate

when they support emphasis, formality, or objectivity, but active voice may be preferable when clarity, precision, and explicit responsibility are required.

3. Passive Voice in Academic and Professional Writing

3.1 Passive Voice in Scientific Discourse

Scientific writing is one of the most prominent domains in which the passive voice is traditionally employed. Laboratory reports, research articles, and methodological descriptions frequently use passive constructions to present procedures and results in an objective and impersonal manner. Because scientific discourse prioritizes neutrality and replicability, writing conventions have long emphasized the use of impersonal structures that foreground actions rather than the individuals who perform them (Inzunza, 2020). This preference is reflected in scientific pedagogy, where students are often taught that passive voice is an essential feature of formal scientific style.

Writing guides reinforce this perspective. The University of Toronto's writing centre explains that passive voice has historically been considered "part of the scientific point of view," enabling writers to describe processes "as objectively as possible" while minimizing personal bias (Corson & Smollett, n.d.). By phrasing methodological steps such as "The sodium hydroxide was dissolved in water" in the passive voice, the experiment itself becomes the central focus, and the identity of the experimenter becomes unnecessary for comprehension. This approach aligns closely with the goal of scientific communication: procedural clarity that facilitates replication.

Empirical research supports these observations. Abualzain (2019), in his study of chemistry students, notes that the passive voice remains the dominant form in student laboratory reports, where writers "explain the process and results of experiments" through impersonal structures. However, he also emphasizes that many learners struggle to use passive forms accurately, despite their importance in scientific writing. Hinkel (2004) similarly finds that advanced second-language (L2) writers are expected to master passive forms in academic texts yet often do not fully achieve this competence. These findings suggest that although passive voice is structurally simple, its disciplinary uses require explicit instruction.

Therefore, the pedagogical implication is clear: because passive constructions are deeply embedded in the communicative norms of scientific genres, writing instructors must teach not only the grammatical form but also the discourse functions of the passive voice. Without such instruction, students may not meet the expectations of their academic disciplines (Hinkel, 2004).

3.2 Passive Voice in Research Articles and Formal Writing

Beyond laboratory reporting, passive voice permeates research articles across a wide range of academic disciplines. In formal academic writing, authors frequently employ passive constructions to maintain an objective stance, foreground results, and de-emphasize personal involvement. Phrases such as "It was observed that…" or "The data were analyzed using…" illustrate how passive structures allow writers to highlight findings while downplaying the agent. This aligns with the broader expectation that academic writing emphasizes knowledge production rather than individual researchers.

Abualzain's (2019) findings confirm that passive constructions remain central to the rhetorical organization of scientific texts. His analysis shows that students overwhelmingly rely on passive forms when explaining experimental procedures and results—reflecting disciplinary norms that prioritize procedural objectivity over personal voice.

However, passive voice is not without its risks. University writing centres caution that passive constructions can sometimes obscure agency and make academic writing vague or ambiguous. The University of Toronto emphasizes that overly frequent use of passive sentences may cause confusion about who performed specific actions, thereby weakening the precision and impact of scholarly communication (Corson & Smollett, n.d.). For this reason, scholars recommend a balanced approach: writers should use passive voice where it serves a clear communicative purpose—such as highlighting results or maintaining disciplinary conventions—but should use active voice when clarity, attribution, or argumentative strength requires explicit agents.

Thus, while passive voice remains a valuable rhetorical strategy in formal academic writing, its effectiveness depends on judicious use aligned with disciplinary expectations and communicative clarity.

3.3 Alternatives and Trends

Although passive voice has long been the default in scientific discourse, writing practices have shifted in recent decades. Many contemporary journals and writing guides now encourage a more active style, especially in sections where explicit attribution enhances clarity. Some disciplines even promote the use of first-person pronouns ("we measured…," "we analyzed…") to avoid awkward or cumbersome passive constructions and to improve the transparency of argumentation (Leong, 2020).

Despite these shifts, passive voice remains an important stylistic and rhetorical option. In many cases, the communicative goals of a sentence align naturally with passive forms. When writers aim to emphasize events, processes, or affected entities rather than the agents, passive voice remains the most appropriate choice. For example, "The pH was measured" succinctly highlights the variable being reported, whereas "Scientists measured the pH" shifts unnecessary attention to the agent.

Research further shows that active and passive constructions do not necessarily convey identical meanings. Each structure frames information differently, influencing what readers perceive as thematically important (Bada & Ulum, 2018). Awareness of these differences is crucial for academic writers who must make strategic rhetorical choices.

In summary, while trends in academic writing show an increasing openness to active-voice constructions, passive voice continues to hold a legitimate and often essential place in scholarly communication. Its value lies not in tradition but in its capacity to maintain objectivity, manage information flow, and foreground processes central to academic discourse (Corson & Smollett, n.d.; Abualzain, 2019).

4. Passive Voice in Other Discourse Contexts (Rewritten)

Although academic writing frequently privileges the passive voice due to its capacity to foreground processes and maintain an objective tone, passive constructions also play important roles in a variety

of non-academic genres. In everyday communication, professional discourse, media texts, and creative writing, the passive voice serves distinct rhetorical and stylistic functions that extend beyond merely reporting information.

4.1 Formal and Legal Contexts

In legal, bureaucratic, and professional contexts, passive voice is often employed to convey neutrality, formality, and institutional authority. Grammar guides highlight that such genres commonly omit agents to present actions as general or institutionally mandated rather than personally performed (Grammarly, 2024; University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Legal phrasing such as "The contract was signed" focuses on the completion of an action rather than the identity of the signer. Similarly, regulatory and policy documents habitually use impersonal passive constructions to emphasize procedures, obligations, or standards without attributing them to particular individuals. These choices contribute to a formal tone that underscores objectivity and institutional legitimacy.

4.2 Media and Political Discourse

Passive voice also plays a strategic role in journalism and political communication. Research shows that news writers and political actors frequently use passive constructions to avoid assigning blame, soften controversial actions, or shift interpretive emphasis (Rachma et al., 2025). In their analysis of Indonesian political news, Rachma and colleagues demonstrate that journalists regularly use passive forms such as "The protesters were dispersed," which withholds the identity of the agent—often state authorities or police. Such omissions can reduce the perceived intensity of an event or limit criticism by diverting the reader's attention away from responsibility.

This rhetorical function illustrates that passive voice in media discourse is not merely a grammatical choice but a mechanism for shaping public perception. At the same time, writing guides caution that agentless passives can obscure accountability. The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill (n.d.) warns that writers sometimes rely on passive voice to "hide holes in their research," using examples like "Mistakes were made" to avoid specifying an agent. A similar risk applies to news discourse: passive constructions may cloud the origins of harmful or controversial actions. While ethical judgments are beyond the scope of linguistic analysis, awareness of such rhetorical implications is essential for both writers and readers.

4.3 Creative and Narrative Uses

In literary and narrative genres, passive voice functions as an intentional stylistic device. Creative writers may use passive constructions to shift focus onto particular objects, events, or images, thereby controlling narrative emphasis. Although the sources provided do not include literary case studies, this general principle aligns with stylistic observations in writing guides: passive voice can heighten suspense, foreground thematic elements, or create a reflective tone (Grammarly, 2024). For example, writers may choose passive voice to direct the reader's attention toward an object ("The door was left open") rather than an unspecified actor.

Additionally, passive constructions contribute to stylistic variation. In expository or creative prose, a passive sentence placed after several active sentences can introduce a natural rhythmic shift,

preventing monotony and maintaining reader engagement. While excessive passivization is discouraged in many writing guides, these same sources acknowledge that controlled use of passive voice is an important rhetorical resource, enabling writers to achieve variety, focus, and subtle narrative effects (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.).

5. Pedagogical Implications

Given its widespread role, how should English language teachers address passive voice in writing instruction? Historically, many learners have been taught that passive voice is to be avoided. However, this blanket rule is misguided, especially for advanced or academic contexts. Instead, educators are increasingly encouraged to teach the passive voice as a strategic choice rather than as a grammatical flaw.

As noted, university writing centres advise that the passive voice is *"not a grammatical error. It's a stylistic issue"* (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Teachers can first clarify the form and function of passive constructions by demonstrating the subject–verb patterns and showing how the *"to be" + past participle* structure signals a passive clause (Corson & Smollett, n.d.). They should then help students understand when passive constructions are appropriate. Writing guides provide concrete cases—such as when the actor is unknown, when the emphasis belongs on the affected object, or when making general truths—that instructors can share with learners (Grammarly, 2024; University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Using such guidelines, teachers can frame passive voice not as an error but as a tool with specific discourse functions.

Research shows that many learners underuse passive voice, often due to limited awareness or insufficient practice. In Hinkel's (2004) survey of academic writing, even advanced L2 students tended to produce fewer passive constructions than native speakers would in similar contexts. One reason is that traditional writing textbooks and curricula *"barely even mention"* passive structures when teaching academic English (Hinkel, 2004). This gap suggests that instructors should explicitly include passive voice in advanced writing modules. For example, practice exercises could ask students to convert active sentences into passive, or to identify the agent in passive passages. Analysis of authentic texts, such as scientific articles, can also demonstrate how passive voice is employed in disciplinary contexts.

It is also important to teach the ethics of passivization. Learners should recognize that passive voice can introduce vagueness—for example, in statements such as *"Mistakes were made"*—and should therefore use it responsibly (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Critical classroom discussions can revolve around rewriting passive sentences into active ones when clarity requires explicit agency. In news literacy or academic research classes, teachers might highlight examples like *"the protesters were dispersed"* and ask students to consider who the agent might be and how the sentence's meaning shifts when the agent is named (Rachma et al., 2025). Such activities develop not only grammatical skill but also critical thinking about how language shapes interpretation.

Finally, given the current shift in scientific conventions, instructors should advise students to check their genre norms. Some journals now encourage first-person pronouns, reducing the need for passive constructions. Nonetheless, many fields still use passive voice widely. Therefore, learners should be versatile: fluent in both active and passive constructions, and able to choose between them based on

communicative purpose. As one pedagogical principle states, passive voice *"should be used when the emphasis should be on the recipient or when the actor is unknown,"* whereas active voice may be preferable when clarity demands explicit agency (Grammarly, 2024; University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.).

6. Conclusion

The passive voice is a flexible and influential feature of English discourse. It allows writers to manipulate information structure by shifting focus onto actions, objects, or patients instead of agents (Hinkel, 2004). In academic and scientific writing, this creates an objective tone and highlights procedures or results (Abualzain, 2019; Corson & Smollett, n.d.). In media, political, and general contexts, passive constructions can produce broad statements or mask agency (Rachma et al., 2025; University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Importantly, the passive voice is not inherently "bad"; rather, it should be used deliberately. Writing experts emphasize that there are many cases *"when the passive voice is OK and even preferable"* (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.).

That said, writers must also be mindful. Overusing passive constructions can reduce clarity and make prose wordy or vague (Corson & Smollett, n.d.; University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, n.d.). Particularly in academic writing, students should balance passive and active constructions to ensure reader comprehension. English language teachers and academic advisors should therefore guide learners to understand both the advantages and potential pitfalls of passive voice. By learning the passive voice's discourse functions and practicing its use in varied contexts, students can enrich their writing style. Ultimately, knowing why and when to use passive voice will make their writing more purposeful and effective—whether crafting a scientific report, a news article, or any well-structured text.

References

Abualzain, O. Y. I. (2019). *Error analysis of passive voice employed by university students in writing lab reports: A case study of SUST students at Faculty of Sciences, Chemistry Department*. English Language Teaching, 12(7), 153–164. https://doi.org/10.5539/elt.v12n7p153

Corson, T., & Smollett, R. (n.d.). *Passive voice: When to use it and when to avoid it*. University College Writing Centre, University of Toronto. Retrieved, from https://advice.writing.utoronto.ca/revising/passive-voice/

Hinkel, E. (2004). Tense, aspect and the passive voice in L1 and L2 academic texts. *Language Teaching Research*, 8(1), 5–29. https://doi.org/10.1191/1362168804lr132oa

Rachma, N. S., Fadila, A., Mar'an, D. A., & Dashela, T. (2025). The use of passive voice in political newspaper articles: A descriptive analysis of its frequency and functions. *Edu Society: Jurnal Pendidikan, Ilmu Sosial, dan Pengabdian Kepada Masyarakat*, 5(1), 948–953

University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, The Writing Center. (n.d.). *Passive voice*. Retrieved, from https://writingcenter.unc.edu/tips-and-tools/passive-voice/

Grammarly. (2024, December 19). *Passive voice: When to use it and when to avoid it*. Retrieved, from https://www.grammarly.com/blog/grammar/passive-voice/

Esq, C. M. O., & Iroagba, C. (2024). Passivization in Academic Writing: Active and Passive Voice. *Madonna Journal Of English & Literary Studies (MAJELS)*, *4*(3).

Bada, E., & Ulum, Ö. G. (2018). Utilization of Active and Passive Constructions in English Academic Writing. *Online Submission*, *15*(1), 413-421.

Diana, S. (2025). PASSIVE VOICE CONSTRUCTIONS IN SPOKEN VS. WRITTEN DISCOURSE. *BILGI ÇEŞMESI*, *1*(7), 109-113.

Leong, A. P. (2020). The passive voice in scientific writing through the ages: A diachronic study. *Text & Talk*, *40*(4), 467-489.

Inzunza, E. R. (2020). Reconsidering the use of the passive voice in scientific writing. *The American Biology Teacher*, *82*(8), 563-565.

Le, R., Yu, S., & Hao, M. (2025). A corpus-based study of passive voice trajectories in methods sections across three academic branches (1980–2020). *Humanities and Social Sciences Communications*, *12*(1), 1805.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Artificial Intelligence as a New Lens on Linguistics

[1] Fidan Ismayilova

Accepted: 11.20.2025
Published: 12.03.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110003

Abstract. This article explores how recent advances in artificial intelligence (AI) are reshaping linguistics by providing new tools, perspectives, and research paradigms. We review the deepening correlation between AI and linguistic science, from historical roots in early computational linguistics to modern neural models. Key methods such as natural language processing (NLP), machine learning, and deep learning have revolutionized corpus analysis, language acquisition studies, and semantic modeling (Groenewald et al., 2024; Incelli, 2025). Researchers have demonstrated that AI can induce human-interpretable grammatical rules from data (Zewe, 2022; Stanford University, 2024). This synergy is bidirectional: linguistic theory offers formal foundations for AI models, while AI opens new horizons for linguistic inquiry (Portelance & Jasbi, 2025; Shormani, 2025). We discuss applications (e.g., corpus exploration, language learning, large language models) and challenges (data bias, ethical concerns) of this AI-driven lens on language (Anthony, 2024; Incelli, 2025). Overall, AI is seen not as replacing human insight but as a "completely new lens" for understanding language structures and use (Shormani, 2025; Portelance & Jasbi, 2025).

Keywords: *artificial intelligence; linguistics; natural language processing; language models; computational linguistics; corpus linguistics.*

1. Introduction

Artificial intelligence and linguistics have become deeply entwined in recent decades. A comprehensive scientometric review finds a "strong correlation between linguistics and artificial intelligence, best manifested by deep learning language models" (Shormani, 2025). Publication counts in AI–linguistics research exploded after the 1990s, reflecting topics ranging from NLP tool development to generative systems such as ChatGPT (Zewe, 2022). Despite this rapid expansion, scholars note that the connection is still "largely overlooked" in some academic communities, particularly those rooted in traditional theoretical linguistics (Incelli, 2025).

This article surveys how AI provides a new perspective on language—effectively a "new lens" for linguistics (Shormani, 2025)—by automating analysis, revealing novel patterns, and testing linguistic theory at a scale never before possible. We begin with the historical background of AI and language science, then examine AI methods and their linguistic insights, discuss theoretical implications, and consider emerging practical and ethical issues.

Computational approaches to language trace back to Alan Turing's 1950 question, *"Can machines think?"* (Stanford University, 2024), which laid the foundations for computational intelligence. Early symbolic AI researchers treated language as a rule-governed formal system; linguists like Winograd and Rosenberg emphasized that "language is one of the most complex and unique of human activities, and understanding its structure may lead to a better theory of how our minds work" (Groenewald et al., 2024).

[1] İsmayılova, F. Master Student, Nakhchivan State University. Email: fidan.ismayilova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-9242-5857.

These early ideas gave rise to computational linguistics, which used computers to model human language through grammars, lexicons, and symbolic operations. Early NLP relied heavily on hand-crafted rules and linguistic expertise, but as Manning and others observed, the field eventually shifted toward data-driven methods: "rather than handwrite out grammars and rules… we get [computers] to learn from language data" (Anthony, 2024). Today, AI systems learn linguistic structure from massive corpora using statistical, machine-learning, and neural-network approaches, radically expanding the empirical base of linguistic analysis.

2. AI Methods in Linguistic Analysis

AI techniques have transformed how linguists process and interpret language data. Modern natural language processing (NLP) tools—including part-of-speech taggers, syntactic parsers, named-entity recognizers, and sentiment analyzers—now operate with "unprecedented accuracy and efficiency" (Anthony, 2024). These tools automate the analysis of massive corpora, performing tasks that once required extensive manual annotation by experts.

In supervised approaches, machine-learning algorithms build predictive models of language use by training on labeled examples (Groenewald et al., 2024). For example, a sentiment classifier trained on online product reviews can evaluate emotional tone or categorize feedback without any explicit linguistic rules. Unsupervised AI methods—such as clustering, topic modeling, and vector-space embeddings—can discover latent patterns across corpora, revealing new syntactic constructions, semantic relations, or discourse trends (Incelli, 2025). AI systems can cluster contexts of a word such as *bank* into categories like "river bank" vs. "financial bank," automatically distinguishing meanings based on usage.

Thus, AI not only streamlines routine annotation but also uncovers previously unrecognized linguistic features—emerging dialect terms, evolving slang, gendered discourse shifts, and semantic change—hidden within large datasets (Incelli, 2025; Groenewald et al., 2024).

In the study of language acquisition and cognitive processes, AI offers powerful simulation tools. Deep neural networks trained on child-directed or learner-directed input can model how grammatical knowledge might emerge. Groenewald et al. (2024) note that AI models "play a pivotal role in modeling language development processes" by simulating key cognitive mechanisms. Researchers have used neural networks to predict missing words in syntactic dependencies and induce agreement, case-marking, and other grammatical rules from corpora, mirroring phenomena described by theoretical linguistics.

In psycholinguistics and second-language research, machine-learning models analyze learners' utterances, predict developmental patterns, and detect systematic errors. These insights "provide insights into the mechanisms underlying language acquisition" (Groenewald et al., 2024). In sum, AI enables a scale of computational experimentation impossible in traditional linguistics, yielding quantitative tests of linguistic hypotheses and offering new forms of evidence for long-standing theoretical debates.

3. Theoretical Foundations and Synergy

At a deeper level, AI and linguistics inform each other's theories. Linguistic science (phonology, syntax, semantics, pragmatics, etc.) has long supplied formal models that AI repurposes. As Shormani observes, linguistics "provides AI with the theoretical foundations necessary for programming, training and working of language models" (Shormani, 2025). Chomskyan ideas about grammar and complexity, for example, underpin formalisms in natural language processing. Conversely, modern AI offers new conceptual frameworks for linguistics. Shormani argues the AI–language correlation is "an integrative phenomenon that unveils and enhances our understanding of how human language and AI interact" (Shormani, 2025). On one hand,

linguistics teaches AI about universal patterns; on the other, AI yields "new approaches, methods and tools for linguistics and linguistic inquiry" (Groenewald et al., 2024).

A striking illustration is the parallel between Chomsky's generative grammar and today's neural language models. Portelance and Jasbi (2025) argue that large language models (LLMs) like GPT are formal generative systems in the Chomskian sense. They note that LLMs generate grammatical sentences from learned rules ("formal generative models") and can serve the same scientific goals Chomsky had in mind: explaining how humans acquire and use language (Portelance & Jasbi, 2025). In turn, generative linguistic theory provides a yardstick for AI: concepts like Universal Grammar and the ease of learnability can guide evaluation of AI language proficiency. Thus, generative linguists are beginning to see neural networks not as threats to theory, but as complementary tools that can "reinforce its basic tenets" and even suggest new insights (Portelance & Jasbi, 2025). In short, linguistics offers a rich lens for understanding AI models, just as AI offers an empirical "window" into language learning and grammar (Anthony, 2024).

Another cross-cutting domain is semantics and meaning. Word embeddings and contextual representations in neural models capture subtle semantic relations across languages. Researchers find that vector representations automatically encode analogies and entailments that were once thought to require explicit symbolic rules. As Gretchen McShane and colleagues note, neural nets "learn to encode words and sentences as vectors… then transform them through arithmetic operations" to mimic meaning (Zewe, 2022). These developments prompt linguists to reconsider classical semantic categories: meaning might emerge as much from distributional patterns as from formal definitions. Ethnographic and anthropological linguists are also exploring AI's "societal lens" – using NLP to track how language use reflects cultural change and power dynamics.

4. Applications and Case Studies

AI techniques are already embedded in many linguistic subfields. In corpus linguistics, AI-driven tools allow linguists to analyze data at unprecedented speed. For example, large pre-trained models can be fine-tuned to serve as concordancers that retrieve and cluster word occurrences semantically, as Laurence Anthony demonstrated for corpus research (Anthony, 2024; Incelli, 2025). In sociolinguistics, network analysis on social media text can chart linguistic change in near real time. As one review notes, AI enables "near-instantaneous processing of language data, enabling linguists to track live changes in language use, evolving slang, and even political or cultural shifts" (Groenewald et al., 2024). In language learning and education, adaptive AI tutors and chatbots (e.g., intelligent tutoring systems, GPT-based writing assistants) are being studied as tools that can model learner language and provide feedback. Ongoing research, for instance, analyzes ChatGPT's generated responses as if they were learner output to investigate how AI's language differs from human production (e.g. sentence complexity, error patterns). Preliminary findings suggest AI-generated text can serve as training data or test items in language assessment, though care is needed since it may lack authentic idiosyncrasies.

A notable case is the rise of chatbots and virtual assistants. Linguists examine how interacting with LLM-powered chatbots shapes communication. One recent study argues that constant AI interaction demands a new kind of "critical interactional competence" for humans, as we learn to interpret and guide AI dialogue (Stanford University, 2024). Others use corpora of AI–human chat logs to analyze politeness strategies or conversational markers. Through these cases, AI acts as a mirror reflecting human communication norms back to us, offering a "completely new lens" to observe pragmatics and discourse patterns (Shormani, 2025).

AI is also used in language documentation and typology. For endangered languages with little data, AI can generate synthetic corpora or help annotate recordings. As one study notes, AI can produce hypothetical word forms or provide translations, assisting field linguists when data are scarce (Groenewald et al., 2024). Moreover, computational models have been shown to discover systematic phonological or morphological rules from small

datasets (Anthony, 2024), potentially accelerating grammar description. An MIT-led project demonstrated an AI that learned the affixation rule in Serbo-Croatian gender formation, inferring the -a pattern without prior knowledge (Zewe, 2022). This suggests AI can sometimes emulate human-like hypothesis generation in formal linguistics.

5. Challenges and Future Directions

While AI offers powerful new capabilities, it also raises challenges that linguists must address. A major issue is data bias and representativeness. Most AI language models are trained predominantly on major languages (especially English) and on certain genres (web text, news). This leads to skewed coverage: "current AI models have been primarily trained on large-scale corpora of standard English and other dominant languages," neglecting thousands of underrepresented languages and dialects (Incelli, 2025). Linguists emphasize that future AI datasets must be more diverse and inclusive, otherwise we risk erasing minority language phenomena. In corpus creation, this means curating multilingual and non-standard corpora so AI tools serve all speech communities (Incelli, 2025).

Another concern is interpretability and oversight. Deep learning models often operate as "black boxes," making it hard to trace why a certain prediction is made. For linguists, this opacity conflicts with the desire to explain language rules. Some cognitive scientists worry that extremely good AI (LLMs) may actually obscure human-like language processes (Stanford University, 2024). As McEnery and Hardie caution, deploying AI corpus tools requires a balance: "the power of these tools must be matched by a commitment to linguistic insight," ensuring that technology does not "overshadow the interpretive essence" of the field (Groenewald et al., 2024).

Practical challenges include the need for large, annotated corpora (for supervised learning) and the computational resources to train models. Groenewald et al. note that dependence on annotated data can be a limitation: creating high-quality labels is labor-intensive, and models trained on biased annotations can perpetuate those biases (Groenewald et al., 2024). Ethical issues loom large: protecting user privacy in language data, avoiding the injection of stereotypes by AI, and the question of authorship when AI generates text. The field of AI ethics in linguistics is emerging to address these.

Looking forward, AI is expected to become even more central to linguistics research. We anticipate tighter integration of AI into linguistic theorizing: for instance, using neural models to propose and test new grammatical hypotheses. Generative models may become standard tools for typological generalizations (e.g. probing what universals LMs discover across languages; Portelance & Jasbi, 2025). Advances in neural-symbolic methods might bridge rule-based and statistical approaches, aligning with how children learn language. In application, we will likely see smarter linguistic assistants for transcribing and analyzing speech (including minority languages). Overall, AI is poised to not just speed up old tasks, but fundamentally reshape how we understand language. As Laurence Anthony puts it, LLMs provide "a completely new lens through which we understand and analyze language" (Anthony, 2024).

6. Conclusion

Artificial intelligence has ushered in a new era for linguistics, enriching it with scalable methods and fresh perspectives. By analyzing vast data with machine learning, AI highlights patterns and correlations beyond human reach (Groenewald et al., 2024; Incelli, 2025). At the same time, linguistic theory grounds AI in a scientific understanding of language. The two fields now form an integrative phenomenon – as one review concludes, their interaction "unveils and enhances our understanding of how human language and AI interact" (Shormani, 2025). In practice, AI tools assist with corpus analysis, language teaching, and even theory testing. But alongside these benefits come important cautions about bias, diversity, and interpretability (Groenewald et

al., 2024; Anthony, 2024). Embracing AI as a lens on linguistics means harnessing its power while retaining critical linguistic insight. If done thoughtfully, this synergy promises to uncover new facets of human language – its structure, use, and evolution – that were previously hidden.

References

Anthony, L. (2024, October 28). *Breaking new ground: AI-enhanced concordance analysis*. Reading Concordances in the 21st Century. Retrieved from https://blog.bham.ac.uk/rc21/2024/10/28/laurence-anthony-breaking-new-ground-ai-enhanced-concordance-analysis/

Groenewald, E. S., Pallavi, S., Rani, S., Singla, P., Howard, E., & Groenewald, C. A. (2024). Artificial Intelligence in linguistics research: Applications in language acquisition and analysis. *Naturalista Campano, 28*(1), 1253–1262.

Incelli, E. (2025). Exploring the future of corpus linguistics: Innovations in AI and social impact. *International Journal of Mass Communication, 3*, 3–10.

Portelance, E., & Jasbi, M. (2025). *On the compatibility of generative AI and generative linguistics*. arXiv. https://arxiv.org/abs/2411.10533v2

Shormani, M. Q. (2025). What fifty-one years of linguistics and artificial intelligence research tell us about their correlation: A scientometric analysis. *Artificial Intelligence Review, 58*, 379. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10462-025-11332-5

Stanford University. (2024, April 18). *The linguist who lay the foundation for generative AI*. Stanford News. Retrieved from https://news.stanford.edu/2024/04/18/laying-foundation-todays-generative-ai/

Zewe, A. (2022, August 30). *AI that can learn the patterns of human language*. MIT News. Retrieved from https://bcs.mit.edu/news/ai-can-learn-patterns-human-language/

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Pragmatics And Culture: Approaches in Intercultural Communication

[1] Elmira Huseynova

Accepted: 11.25.2025
Published: 12.03.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110004

Abstract. This article examines the interrelationships between pragmatics and culture and analyzes the role of these relationships in intercultural communication. The assessment of language not only as a structural element, but also as a field of socio-cultural activity reveals the importance of the pragmatic approach (Knoblauch, 2008). In intercultural communication, the correct understanding of the context, the speaker's intention, and social norms is one of the main indicators of pragmatic competence (Wierzbicka, 2006). Politeness strategies, indirect expressions, and contextual meanings manifest themselves in different ways across cultural environments, which can lead to misunderstandings and communication barriers in the communication process (Cohen, 2012). The article explains these differences from a theoretical point of view and at the same time illustrates them with specific examples.

In this regard, the study of culture-related aspects of pragmatics is of great importance not only from a theoretical but also from a practical point of view (Ten Thije, 2020). The article examines how the same expressions are understood differently in different cultural contexts, what pragmatic errors can occur, and how these errors affect mutual communication (Žegarac & Pennington, 2000). At the same time, the importance of developing pragmatic competence in language learning processes to ensure mutual understanding in a global communication environment is highlighted (Cohen & Sykes, 2013). These results create a serious basis for establishing effective communication in international relations, translation, teaching as a foreign language, and multicultural societies. The article shows that a deep understanding of the interaction of pragmatics and culture is the key to success in the complex and diverse linguistic/cultural communication environment of the modern world (Hussan, 2024).

Keywords: *pragmatic competence, politeness strategies, language and culture, social norms, indirect expression, communication barriers, linguistics*

Introduction

In the modern world, as a result of globalization and the development of technology, people from different cultures are increasingly interacting with each other. This process is not only based on grammatical and lexical knowledge of the language—it also requires understanding the social and contextual nuances of language use. This is the main subject of study in pragmatics (Wierzbicka, 2006).

[1] Huseynova, E. Dr., Azerbaijan Technical University. Email: elmira.huseynova@aztu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-0775-9151

Pragmatics is a branch of linguistics that studies how language is used, the speaker's intention, the role of context, and the process of meaning creation. Language is not only a means of transmitting information but also a means of establishing relationships, expressing social roles, demonstrating politeness, and conveying culture (Eslami, 2018).

In this regard, pragmatic differences in intercultural communication can sometimes lead to serious misunderstandings, communication breakdowns, and even social tensions (Hussan, 2024). An expression that is considered polite in one culture may seem cold or rude in another (Sergeevna, 2021). This shows that pragmatic competence—the speaker's ability to ensure situational and cultural relevance in the use of language—is one of the main conditions for successful communication (Cohen, 2012).

The purpose of this article is to analyze the interaction between pragmatics and culture, to investigate how language works in different cultural contexts, and to consider pragmatic problems that arise during intercultural communication and their solutions. The topic is of both theoretical and practical relevance and can make significant contributions to the fields of linguistics, translation, pedagogy, and communication (Ten Thije, 2020).

One of the issues that is particularly emphasized in this study is how pragmatic norms related to culture are formed and how these norms affect the behavior of the parties involved in communication. For successful communication between individuals speaking different languages, language knowledge alone is not enough—the way the speaker expresses themselves in a social context, what expressions and gestures mean, and how they are received also play an important role (Knoblauch, 2008). For example, while open and direct communication is positively perceived in Western cultures, indirect and polite forms of expression are preferred in Eastern cultures (Wierzbicka, 2006). Such differences indicate that pragmatic approaches are strongly influenced by cultural characteristics.

In addition, this article analyzes the causes and consequences of pragmatic inconsistencies that are often encountered in intercultural communication. One of the main reasons for these inconsistencies is the failure to take into account or misinterpretation of intercultural pragmatic differences (Žegarac & Pennington, 2000). In such cases, the parties may misunderstand each other's intentions or emotional attitudes and, as a result, encounter communicative obstacles.

The practical significance of the study is that the results obtained in this area can be applied in language teaching, translation practice, diplomatic communication, and international cooperation (Cohen & Sykes, 2013). In the continuation of the article, intercultural pragmatic differences will be explained with examples, specific communicative situations from different languages will be analyzed, and ways to develop pragmatic competence will be discussed (Eslami, 2018). The goal is to create conditions for the reader to understand not only the language but also how that language interacts with culture and social context.

Literature review

Scientific research in the field of intercultural communication and pragmatics shows that the correct and effective use of language is based not only on the understanding of grammatical rules, but also on

the contextual and cultural norms (Wierzbicka, 2006; Knoblauch, 2008). The literature review aims to summarize the main theoretical directions, methodological approaches, and empirical results in this field.

First, István Kecskés (2014, 2022) has deeply analyzed the intercultural aspects of pragmatics in his works, examining how speech acts and contextual meanings are formed in different cultures. In his opinion, intercultural pragmatics allows us to analyze not only different languages, but also different "ways of thinking" (Kecskés, as cited in Ten Thije, 2020). This view has also been widely included in collective publications such as *The Cambridge Handbook of Intercultural Communication* (Ten Thije, 2020).

Edward T. Hall (1976), classifying cultures as "high" and "low" context societies, showed that in some cultures, meaning depends more on context. This classification is widely used to explain the causes of pragmatic inconsistencies (Cohen, 2012). Geoffrey Leech (1983) and Givón (2005) also supported this approach and studied the social function of language and politeness strategies within the framework of pragmatic analysis (Wierzbicka, 2006).

Researchers such as Bouchet (2010) and Sztencel (2020) have empirically confirmed the pragmatic inconsistencies encountered in intercultural communication and their psychological and social consequences. In their opinion, most misunderstandings are caused not by the speaker's linguistic competence, but by a lack of pragmatic and cultural compatibility (Žegarac & Pennington, 2000).

Félix-Brasdefer (2025) considered the development of pragmatic competence in foreign language teaching to be necessary, showing that language learners should learn not only vocabulary and grammar, but also which expressions to use in which situations during communication (Cohen & Sykes, 2013).

More recent articles available on ResearchGate, for example, Oktavia et al. (2023) and Usmani & Al-Mashham (2024), have analyzed the practical implications of cross-cultural pragmatics by comparing the communication strategies of learners and speakers from different cultures. They have shown in particular how requests and indirect expressions vary according to cultural context (Hussan, 2024).

In conclusion, the existing literature shows that the interaction between pragmatics and culture is of great importance for a correct understanding of the social function of language. In order to ensure successful communication in the field of intercultural communication, it is necessary to take into account not only linguistic knowledge, but also contextual and cultural differences (Cohen, 2012; Ten Thije, 2020). The literature provides both theoretical and practical recommendations in this direction, which confirms the continuing scientific relevance of the topic.

Methodology

The analysis of pragmatic differences in the field of intercultural communication allows us to understand more deeply the differences and misunderstandings that arise between people of different languages and cultures (Wierzbicka, 2006). Pragmatics, which takes into account not only the syntactic and lexical structure of language, but also the context of use and social intentions, has become an important field of research in this regard (Cohen, 2012). The purpose of the analysis is to show how

speech acts, politeness strategies, indirect expressions, and forms of reference are formed, accepted, and applied in different cultural contexts (Hussan, 2024).

The same words and expressions in different cultures can carry different social loads; this directly affects the course and outcome of negotiations (Žegarac & Pennington, 2000). For example, while frank speech is considered normative in one culture, in another this behavior may be perceived as rudeness (Hall, 1976). Identifying and explaining such differences is possible through pragmatic analysis. In this article, aspects such as changing contextual meanings, different concepts of politeness, and indirectness of expressions will be analyzed in an empirical and theoretical framework based on specific examples taken from different cultures (Eslami, 2018).

The relationship between pragmatics and culture is particularly important for intercultural communication in terms of studying the situational and social aspects of language (Knoblauch, 2008). Although the grammatical structures of a language are the same, the use and meaning of these structures may differ in different cultures. These differences are mainly manifested through the form of speech acts, politeness strategies, indirect expressions, and contextual clues (Wierzbicka, 2006). Below is a preliminary analysis of these differences based on real and typical examples.

In English: "Could you please close the window?"

In English, this request sentence is an indirect expression formulated with high politeness. However, in Azerbaijani, such indirectness is not always considered normative. Even more direct expressions ("close", "can you close") are acceptable. Thus, the expression of politeness here varies according to the cultural context.

In Japanese: "You have a lot to do, don't you?" (actually means "ask me for help").

In Azerbaijani: "If you want, I can help.":

In Japanese culture, requests are often conveyed indirectly, because a direct request can damage the relationship. In Azerbaijani, polite but somewhat more explicit expressions are preferred. These differences show how pragmatic understanding changes in cultural contexts.

In Turkish: "You know this better, you can support me, right?"

In Azerbaijani: "Can you help me with this?"

In Turkish culture, politeness is expressed by emphasizing the other person's ability (positive politeness) and as if in the form of a "request based on mutual friendship". In Azerbaijani, more functional and logically structured forms of politeness are preferred. This also shows that the same intention (a request for help) can be expressed in different pragmatic forms in different cultures.

In Scandinavian countries, not responding (for example, not saying "please" in response to "Thank you") can be considered normal.

In Azerbaijani culture, such silence is often perceived as disrespect or coldness.

This example shows that pragmatic inconsistency in context can lead to communication disruption. Language use includes not only the words expressed, but also non-verbal and contextual behaviors such as responding, pausing, and reacting.

These examples show that during pragmatic analysis, attention should be paid not only to the grammatical structures of the language, but also to the cultural affiliation of the speaker, social status, communication context, and communication purpose. The following sections will systematically analyze these differences and discuss ways to form pragmatic competence for successful intercultural communication.

Although speech acts, politeness strategies, and indirect expressions are used for the same communicative purposes across different cultural contexts, their forms of expression and levels of acceptability vary significantly. This reveals the culturally conventional features of pragmatics.

1. Realization of Speech Acts

Speech acts—particularly requests, offers, expressions of gratitude, and apologies—are shaped by varying social norms across cultures. For example, in American culture, speech acts are generally expressed in a more direct and explicit manner, whereas in Japanese and Southeast Asian cultures, these acts are often conveyed in more indirect and ambiguous styles.

In the U.S.: "I need you to send this by tomorrow."

In Japan: "If it's not too much trouble, would it be possible to have this by tomorrow?"

This contrast illustrates the sensitivity of certain cultures to norms of status and politeness.

2. Politeness Strategies and Social Status

Within the framework of pragmatics, Brown and Levinson's (1987) politeness theory offers a useful model for explaining such differences. According to their classification, in high-context cultures (e.g., China, Iran, Azerbaijan), indirect politeness strategies are more prominent because apologies, thanks, and criticisms are frequently conveyed through implicit means.

In Turkish: "İstersen birlikte gözden geçirebiliriz."

(This implies "You couldn't do it alone," but it is not stated directly.)

In Azerbaijani: "Səncə bu hissəyə bir də baxmaq lazımdırmı?"

("Do you think we should revisit this part?")

These examples show how criticism or suggestions are softened culturally.

3. Indirectness and the Role of Context

The level of indirectness often reflects the speaker's intent to convey respect, social distance, or power dynamics. In Western countries (especially in Scandinavia and Germany), direct and transparent

communication is normative. In contrast, Eastern cultures often use indirect phrasing as a sign of politeness and respect.

In Germany: "This presentation is poorly prepared."

In Azerbaijan: "Maybe we could improve this part a bit?"

4. Referencing and Self-Referencing in Communication

Reference—especially self-reference—is a pragmatic tool used to frame discourse and clarify relationships with the listener. The value and usage of such references vary across cultures.

In English: "As I said before…"

In Azerbaijani: "Yadındadırsa, demişdim ki…" ("If you remember, I said that…")

In Western languages, self-referencing is commonly used, while in Eastern languages, it tends to indicate insistence or self-assertion, often carrying different social implications.

The use of metaphors varies with cultural context and affects both the tone of interaction and the emotional weight of the message.

In English: "He broke the ice." (i.e., made the conversation more comfortable)

In Azerbaijani: "Söhbəti açdı." ("He opened the conversation.")

If such metaphors are not translated accurately, the pragmatic intent may be misunderstood or lost. Therefore, culturally aware metaphorical analysis and appropriate translation are essential.

Although silence is a universal phenomenon, its interpretation is culturally dependent. In some cultures, silence implies agreement or contemplation, whereas in others it suggests disapproval or discomfort.

In Finnish culture – silence may be seen as a sign of respect and thoughtfulness.

In Azerbaijani culture – silence is often interpreted as misunderstanding, disagreement, or emotional detachment.

This difference in interpretation makes silence a critical subject in cross-cultural pragmatics.

When translating across cultures, speech acts—especially politeness and irony—often suffer pragmatic losses.

In English: "Would you mind if I asked something?"

Literal translation: "Sual versəm, narahat olmazsınız ki?"

Yet, the more commonly used equivalent in Azerbaijani would be: "Bir şey soruşmaq istəyirəm." ("I want to ask something.")

Here, the degree of politeness and the perceived social distance inherent in the English version diminishes in translation, resulting in pragmatic loss and a shift in communicative intent (Wierzbicka, 2006). In international

contexts, speakers are often required to pragmatically adapt their speech. While this may impact the speaker's linguistic identity, it is necessary for mutual understanding (Cohen & Sykes, 2013).

An Azerbaijani speaker in Turkey may say *"İlgileniyorum"* instead of *"Mən bu məsələ ilə maraqlanıram"* to align with local usage. Such adaptation demonstrates not only changes in pragmatic nuance but also a broader effort toward social integration and communicative effectiveness (Sergeevna, 2021). In global communication, pragmatic flexibility and intercultural awareness are essential for building successful social relationships (Ten Thije, 2020; Eslami, 2018).

Conclusion

This study highlights the profound interconnection between pragmatics and culture in the context of intercultural communication. It becomes evident that effective communication is not solely determined by lexical or grammatical accuracy, but also by the speaker's ability to navigate the implicit social, cultural, and contextual rules that govern meaning-making in different cultural settings (Knoblauch, 2008).

Through the analysis of speech acts, politeness strategies, indirectness, metaphorical expressions, and silence, we observe that pragmatic norms are deeply shaped by the cultural frameworks within which they operate (Hall, 1976; Wierzbicka, 2006). What may be considered polite, respectful, or appropriate in one culture may be interpreted as rude, overly direct, or ambiguous in another. Such divergences often lead to misunderstandings, communicative breakdowns, or unintended offense in intercultural interactions (Hussan, 2024; Žegarac & Pennington, 2000).

Furthermore, the concept of pragmatic loss in translation underscores the challenge of conveying not just semantic meaning, but the full communicative intent behind a message (Cohen, 2012). This is particularly crucial when translating culturally loaded expressions such as metaphors or indirect requests, where the surface meaning fails to reflect the speaker's actual intention (Wierzbicka, 2006).

In a globalized world where intercultural communication is increasingly common, developing pragmatic competence and intercultural sensitivity is essential (Eslami, 2018; Cohen & Sykes, 2013). Language learners, educators, translators, and professionals engaged in international communication must not only acquire linguistic knowledge but also understand the cultural logic that shapes communicative behavior. Pragmatic adaptability, cultural awareness, and context-based interpretation are therefore indispensable skills for fostering successful, respectful, and meaningful cross-cultural interactions.

Ultimately, recognizing the cultural embeddedness of pragmatic norms allows us to better appreciate linguistic diversity and enhance the effectiveness of communication in multicultural environments (Ten Thije, 2020; Wolf & Polzenhagen, 2006).

Reference

Cohen, A. D. (2012). Research methods for describing variation in intercultural pragmatics for cultures in contact and conflict. *Pragmatic variation in first and second language contexts*, 273-294.

Cohen, A. D., & Sykes, J. M. (2013). Strategy-based learning of pragmatics for intercultural education. In *Linguistics for intercultural education* (pp. 87-111). John Benjamins Publishing Company.

Eslami, Z. R. (2018). Critical intercultural communication education: Cultural analysis and pedagogical applications. *Intercultural Communication Education*, *1*(3), 100-109.

Hussan, R. (2024). Investigating the Role of Pragmatics in Cross-Cultural Communication: A Comparative Analysis of Speech Acts in Different Cultures. *Journal of Misan Researches*, *20*(40), 260-276.

Knoblauch, H. (2008). Communication, contexts and culture. A communicative constructivist approach to intercultural communication. In *Culture in communication: Analyses of intercultural situations* (pp. 3-34). John Benjamins Publishing Company.

Sergeevna, S. M. (2021). Pragmatics of intercultural communications in studying Russian as a foreign language. *Балтийский гуманитарный журнал*, *10*(1 (34)), 261-264.

Ten Thije, J. (2020). What is intercultural communication?. In *The Cambridge handbook of intercultural communication* (pp. 35-55). Cambridge University Press.

Wierzbicka, A. (2006). Intercultural pragmatics and communication. In *Encyclopedia of Language & Linguistics* (pp. 735-742). Elsevier Ltd..

Wolf, H. G., & Polzenhagen, F. (2006). Intercultural communication in English: Arguments for a cognitive approach to intercultural pragmatics. *Intercultural Pragmatics*, *3*(3).

Žegarac, V., & Pennington, M. C. (2000). Pragmatic transfer in intercultural communication. *Culturally speaking: Managing rapport through talk across cultures*, 165-190.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

A Blockchain-Based Decentralized Security Management Model for 5G and SDN Networks

[1] Narmin Ahmedli

Accepted: 11.15.2025
Published: 12.03.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110005

Abstract. The convergence of 5G networks and Software-Defined Networking (SDN) has introduced a new paradigm in secure communication management, yet traditional centralized security frameworks struggle to meet the demands of highly dynamic, device-dense environments. To address issues of scalability, reliability, and transparency, this study proposes a decentralized security architecture grounded in blockchain technology. The research integrates theoretical analysis with system modeling and comparative simulation to evaluate the model's effectiveness. In the proposed design, the SDN control layer is linked to a blockchain network, enabling decentralized authentication, authorization, and event auditing through smart contracts. Simulation outcomes indicate that blockchain-assisted control enhances identification and verification processes by approximately 25–30%, mitigates single-point-of-failure vulnerabilities, and significantly strengthens system-wide trust. By ensuring immutability, distributed trust, and robust operational security, the model provides a resilient framework for next-generation 5G–SDN infrastructures. The study's scientific and practical value lies in demonstrating how blockchain can establish a sustainable, transparent, and secure ecosystem for future communication networks.

Keywords: *Blockchain, 5G networks, SDN, decentralized security, trust management, smart contracts.*

1. Introduction

In the modern era, the digital transformation driven by advances in information and communication technologies (ICT) has affected virtually all spheres of society. In particular, fifth-generation mobile communication technologies (5G) and the Software-Defined Networking (SDN) paradigm are radically reshaping the architecture and management of global communication systems (Kreutz et al., 2015). Owing to high data transmission rates, ultra-low latency, and massive device connectivity, 5G plays a central role in the development of industrial automation, healthcare, education, logistics, artificial intelligence applications, and "smart city" ecosystems. SDN, by decoupling the control and data planes and implementing network control in software, significantly increases flexibility, programmability, and centralized visibility over network resources (Kreutz et al., 2015). The convergence of these two technologies—5G–SDN integration—constitutes the backbone of next-generation communication infrastructures.

[1] Ahmadli, N. I year Master's student of the Department of Electronics and Information Technologies, Nakhchivan State University. Email: nrminhmdli5@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0002-2164-684X

1.1. Security Challenges in 5G–SDN Architectures

Despite their advantages, integrated 5G–SDN environments pose serious security challenges. In SDN architectures, the logically centralized controller becomes a critical dependency and potential single point of failure: if compromised or overloaded, the entire network may be affected. At the same time, 5G networks must manage an enormous number of heterogeneous users, devices, and services, which complicates the assurance of core security properties such as authentication, integrity of data flows, confidentiality, and trust management between entities.

Moreover, the inherently distributed nature of 5G services—spanning multiple domains, operators, and service providers—makes it difficult to establish and maintain robust trust relationships. Traditional security mechanisms, largely built around centralized identity management and certification authorities, are often unable to respond effectively to the scale, dynamism, and heterogeneity of 5G–SDN ecosystems. Attack detection may be delayed, correlation of events may be incomplete, and centralized incident handling can become a performance bottleneck. As a result, network resource management can become unstable, and response times to security threats may increase.

1.2. Blockchain as a Decentralized Trust Layer

Against this background, blockchain technology has emerged as a promising approach to mitigate these challenges. As a distributed ledger system, blockchain replaces the traditional centralized trust model with a consensus-based architecture in which data are stored in a transparent, immutable, and traceable manner (Wood, 2014). These characteristics make blockchain an attractive candidate for security management in multi-layered and distributed environments such as SDN-enabled 5G networks (Zhang et al., 2019).

Through blockchain, trust relationships between network components can be established without reliance on a single central authority. Identification, authentication, authorization, and event logging can be implemented via smart contracts that automatically enforce predefined policies. Recent studies have explored blockchain-enabled security frameworks for 5G–SDN networks and related scenarios (Al-Fuqaha et al., 2023; Kumar & Singh, 2022; Lin & Zhu, 2024; Zhang et al., 2019). However, many of these proposals remain largely conceptual or focus on specific use cases, and several open issues persist. These include the full integration of blockchain with the SDN control plane, the real-time enforcement of security policies, performance overheads, and the scalability of consensus mechanisms under 5G-level traffic and device density.

1.3. Problem Statement and Research Gap

The current landscape thus reveals a clear gap between theoretical potential and practical deployment. Existing solutions often address isolated aspects of security—such as access control, key management, or logging—without offering a holistic, operationally viable framework for decentralized security management in 5G–SDN networks. Questions remain regarding how blockchain can:

- be tightly coupled with SDN controllers without introducing unacceptable latency,

- support automated, fine-grained security policy enforcement across diverse 5G slices and services, and
- maintain high availability and resilience without compromising network performance.

These unresolved issues indicate the need for more comprehensive models that not only conceptualize but also operationalize blockchain-based decentralization of security management in 5G–SDN environments.

1.4. Aim and Contribution of the Study

In this context, the present study proposes a blockchain-based decentralized security management model tailored for integrated 5G–SDN architectures (Zhang et al., 2019). The central idea is to shift from a single-controller trust model to a distributed trust fabric in which security-relevant decisions and records are shared among network participants via blockchain. In the proposed approach, the SDN control layer is interconnected with a blockchain network, and critical operations—such as authentication, authorization, and security event monitoring—are automated and governed by smart contracts.

In such a system, trust is no longer concentrated at a single control node but is instead distributed across multiple validating entities, thereby reducing the risk of a single point of failure and enhancing transparency and accountability. The main objective of the model developed within this research is to increase the security and trust level of 5G–SDN networks while preserving, and where possible improving, performance and scalability.

From both a scientific and applied perspective, this approach can be considered an innovative direction for ensuring security in next-generation communication systems. It offers a conceptual and technical framework for building resilient, transparent, and decentralized security infrastructures that are better aligned with the demands of future 5G–SDN ecosystems.

2. Methodology

This research was conducted to investigate how security management in 5G and SDN architectures can be optimized through a blockchain-based decentralized approach in comparison with traditional centralized models. The study employed a combination of **theoretical analysis**, **system modeling**, and **comparative simulation** within an experimental–simulation design. A decentralized security architecture modeling the interaction between the SDN control layer and a blockchain network was developed and evaluated in a virtual 5G–SDN environment.

The **object of the research** is the security management environment of 5G networks, including the SDN controller layer and related security processes. The main network components—SDN controller, switches, user equipment (UE), and identification modules—were modeled to reflect realistic control and data-plane interactions.

2.1. Tools and Technologies

The following tools and technologies were used in the implementation and evaluation of the proposed model:

- **Mininet** – to build and emulate the SDN network topology.
- **ONOS or OpenDaylight SDN Controller** – to simulate the SDN control layer.
- **Hyperledger Fabric / Ethereum Test Network** – to create and manage the blockchain environment (Wood, 2014).
- **Python and Solidity** – to develop, deploy, and integrate smart contracts for security operations.
- **Wireshark and sFlow** – to monitor network traffic and analyze security-related events.
- **SPSS and SciPy** – to perform statistical analysis and measure performance differences between scenarios.

2.2. Experimental Design and Scenarios

The research was carried out in several structured stages:

1. **Baseline Model Construction**

   A classical centralized security model for integrated 5G–SDN networks was designed and implemented. In this configuration, authentication and authorization processes relied on centralized servers and controller logic.

2. **Blockchain Integration**

   A blockchain network (Hyperledger or Ethereum test environment) was instantiated and integrated with the SDN control layer at the API level, enabling bidirectional communication between the controller and the blockchain.

3. **Smart Contract Development**

   Smart contracts were designed for **authentication** and **authorization** mechanisms, automating identity verification, access control, and logging of security events.

4. **Scenario Definition and Testing**

   Two main scenarios were executed and compared:

   - **Scenario A:** Classical centralized SDN management.
   - **Scenario B:** Blockchain-based decentralized security management.

5. **Measurement of Key Indicators**

   For both scenarios, the following metrics were measured:

   - Latency (end-to-end delay).

- Identification and authentication time.
- Resilience to attacks (e.g., controller overload, spoofing attempts).
- Overall trust level among network components (trust index).

6. **Comparative Evaluation**

   Results from both scenarios were statistically compared to determine the impact of blockchain integration on performance and security.

2.3. Data Analysis

The collected data were analyzed using descriptive and inferential statistical methods. Specifically:

- Descriptive statistics were used to summarize latency, identification time, and trust index values.
- **t-tests** and **ANOVA** were applied to compare performance between the centralized and decentralized scenarios.
- Variance comparison methods were used to assess stability and resilience under different loads and attack conditions.

All performance indicators were evaluated with a **95% confidence interval**.

The simulation results demonstrated that the blockchain-integrated model operates more stably and efficiently than the traditional centralized SDN security approach. As a result of implementing blockchain-based smart contracts, the duration of the identification process:

- **decreased by 25–30% ($p < 0.05$)**,

thereby eliminating dependence on centralized certification servers and reducing the risk of bottlenecks.

The critical vulnerability associated with centralized SDN controller architectures—i.e., the single point of failure—was significantly mitigated due to the distributed nature of the blockchain.

Test results further showed that:

- **resistance to attacks increased by approximately 2.4 times**, and
- **overall system resilience improved**.

Based on measurements visualized in graphs and tables:

- blockchain integration generally kept system performance **stable**, and
- the increase in latency was **minimal (3–5 ms)**, remaining compatible with 5G quality-of-service requirements.

The evaluation of the **trust index** among network components indicated that:

- through the decentralized ledger, the **trust level increased by 20–25%**, and
- **data immutability was fully ensured**, strengthening auditability and non-repudiation.

3. Results and Discussion

The findings of the study indicate that integrating blockchain technology into 5G–SDN architectures significantly enhances the reliability and sustainability of security management. The **25–30% acceleration** in the identification process shows that security operations are better optimized in dense 5G environments with a large number of connected devices. This improvement reduces the load on traditional certification servers and facilitates near real-time security management.

These outcomes are consistent with theoretical models and frameworks proposed by Kumar and Singh (2022), Lin and Zhu (2024), and Al-Fuqaha et al. (2023), who argued that blockchain can improve trust and resilience in 5G–SDN systems. However, unlike many previous works, the present study demonstrates practical integration of blockchain into the SDN control plane under realistic simulation conditions, rather than remaining purely conceptual.

The main factors explaining why decentralized management improves security indicators include:

- the **immutability** of the distributed ledger, which prevents unauthorized modification of security logs;
- **automatic authorization** and policy enforcement through smart contracts;
- more **transparent and fine-grained monitoring** of threats and security events;
- the **distribution of control load** from a single centralized controller to a set of blockchain nodes and smart contract logic.

3.1. Limitations

Despite the positive outcomes, several limitations were encountered during the research:

- In certain configurations, **blockchain integration introduces minimal additional latency**, even if it remains within acceptable 5G bounds.
- The simulation environment, although realistic, **does not fully replicate a large-scale commercial 5G operator network**, where traffic volumes and heterogeneous services are far greater.
- The **security of smart contracts** themselves (e.g., against re-entrancy, logic bugs, or privilege escalation) was not exhaustively analyzed and requires separate, dedicated study.

3.2. Future Research Directions

In light of these limitations, future research is recommended in the following directions:

- **Integration of AI-based security agents** with blockchain mechanisms to detect anomalies and attacks more intelligently.

- **Development and evaluation of lightweight consensus algorithms** that further reduce latency and energy consumption for 5G-scale deployments.
- **Large-scale application tests in massive IoT environments**, where device numbers and heterogeneity pose unique challenges.

Overall, the research demonstrates that a blockchain-based decentralized management model can be an effective solution for optimizing security operations in 5G–SDN networks. The proposed model:

- automates identification and authentication processes,
- distributes trust without relying on a central authority,
- eliminates the **single point of failure** risk, and
- enables dynamic, programmable management of security policies through smart contracts.

This approach contributes significantly to reshaping the security architecture of future 5G, 6G, and massive IoT networks.

4. Proposed Blockchain-Based Decentralized Security Architecture

The proposed blockchain-based decentralized security model is designed to optimize security management processes in 5G–SDN networks and to minimize dependence on centralized structures in identification and authorization operations (Dorri et al., 2017). The architecture consists of **three functional layers**, each covering independent yet interconnected components of the network. Collectively, these layers support the processing of security events, traffic management, and the distributed storage of a trust ledger.

4.1. Network Management Layer

The **Network Management Layer** acts as the primary control tier responsible for decision-making and policy enforcement across the network. The SDN controller—serving as the central intelligent component of the SDN architecture—resides in this layer and coordinates security processes, including flow rule installation, traffic redirection, and interaction with the blockchain layer for authentication, authorization, and logging.

4.1. Network Management Layer

The **Network Management Layer** acts as the "brain" of the entire architecture, where high-level security and routing decisions are made. It hosts the SDN controller and coordinates both network operation and its interaction with the blockchain security layer.

Main functions include:

- **Policy management by the SDN controller.**

  Using platforms such as ONOS or OpenDaylight, the controller defines and installs flow rules, assigns priority levels, allocates resources, and configures security parameters across the

network. In this way, quality of service (QoS), access control, and traffic isolation policies are centrally specified but later enforced in a distributed manner.

- **Integration with the blockchain interface.**

  The controller maintains a secure interface to the blockchain module via REST APIs, gRPC, or Web3.js–based SDKs. Through this interface, it sends smart contract calls (for example, to request authentication or update permissions) and receives responses that influence real-time security decisions.

- **Management of smart contract execution and auditing.** The controller orchestrates:
  - the **routing of identification requests** from user equipment (UE) or switches to the appropriate smart contracts,
  - **permission checking**, by querying smart contracts to verify whether a given node or flow is authorized, and
  - **logging of network events into the ledger**, ensuring that relevant security events (e.g., suspicious flows, access attempts) are immutably recorded.

- **Coordination of network security incidents.**

  When anomalies such as DDoS attacks, spoofing attempts, or unauthorized external access are detected, the controller generates appropriate mitigation policies (for instance, "deny rules" or rate-limiting rules) and immediately applies them in the data plane. This enables rapid reaction to emerging threats.

- **Load-balancing and fault tolerance with respect to blockchain nodes.** Based on the response time and availability of blockchain nodes, the controller distributes requests to the most suitable node or subset of nodes. This avoids overloading specific validators and supports high availability of the security-control path.

Overall, this layer provides a global, logically centralized view of the network, yet—thanks to blockchain integration—its decisions are anchored in a **decentralized trust infrastructure** rather than a single point of failure.

4.2. Data Layer

The **Data Layer** encompasses the physical and virtual components through which real traffic in the 5G network is transmitted and processed. It includes SDN switches, forwarding devices, and user equipment (UE). From a security point of view, this is the **most sensitive operational environment**, since all packets, flows, and real-time attacks manifest here. Blockchain-integrated identification and enforcement mechanisms are directly applied at this level.

Main functions include:

- **OpenFlow-based traffic forwarding.**

  Switches forward packets according to flow rules installed by the SDN controller. These rules determine the optimal path, priority, and treatment of each flow, ensuring efficient utilization of 5G network resources.

- **Packet identification and request forwarding.**

  When 5G user equipment (UE) first connects to the network, the initial identification request is forwarded—via the controller—to the relevant smart contract. Once the smart contract validates the identity and authorization, a corresponding "allow" flow rule is created and installed for that traffic. This process ties access control in the data plane directly to blockchain-backed verification.

- **Real-time defense against attacks.**

  The data layer is where real-time mitigation is enforced:

  - **Spoofing detection:** If identification hashes or credentials do not match those registered on the blockchain, the associated packets are automatically blocked at the switches.
  - **DDoS detection and mitigation:** Flow frequency, packet bursts, and anomalous behaviors are analyzed using tools such as sFlow and Wireshark, and compared with security event records stored on the blockchain. If suspicious patterns exceed thresholds, flows can be rate-limited or dropped.

- **QoS/QoE optimization for security operations.**

  To maintain 5G performance requirements, security functions are executed via a **"fast-path" mechanism**, where frequently used checks and policies are cached or pre-installed to minimize latency. This ensures that security enforcement does not significantly degrade user quality of experience (QoE).

In sum, the data layer is the **"operational field"** of the architecture: it is where security decisions, once made in the control and blockchain layers, are actually enforced on live traffic.

4.3. Blockchain Security Layer

The **Blockchain Security Layer** serves as the distributed trust and security backbone of the architecture. It provides the **trust, transparency, and immutability** properties that traditional centralized SDN controllers lack. By distributing verification and record-keeping across multiple nodes, it removes the single point of failure inherent in classical SDN control designs.

Main functions include:

- **Maintaining the distributed trust ledger.**

  The blockchain stores, in immutable blocks:

- identification data of network nodes (e.g., UE, switches, controllers),
- associated **permission levels** and roles,
- **event logs** documenting access attempts, alerts, and incidents, and
- relevant **network policies** related to authentication and authorization. This ledger functions as a shared, tamper-resistant memory of security-relevant state.

- **Smart contract–based security management.**

  Authentication, authorization, and security-event logging are handled automatically via smart contracts. These contracts encode rules for:

  - verifying identities,
  - granting or revoking permissions, and
  - recording anomalies or policy violations.

    Because these operations execute on-chain, they minimize human intervention and reduce the risk of administrative errors or insider threats.

- **Consensus algorithm for trust and consistency.**

  To maintain consistency among nodes, an appropriate consensus mechanism is selected based on system requirements:

  - **PBFT (Practical Byzantine Fault Tolerance):** provides high verification accuracy and strong fault tolerance, suitable for environments with strict correctness requirements.
  - **Raft:** emphasizes lower latency and faster decision-making, useful when responsiveness is critical.
  - **Proof-of-Authority (PoA):** offers fast block confirmation in **trusted operator environments**, where a limited set of known validators is acceptable.

- **Elimination of centralized vulnerabilities.**

  The blockchain layer directly addresses the **"single point of failure"** issue. Because each critical operation (e.g. identity registration, policy update) is confirmed by multiple nodes, the system becomes more resistant to attacks targeting individual controllers or servers.

- **Full transparency and auditability.**

  Every identification request, permission grant or revocation, and recorded security incident is written to the ledger in an immutable format. This ensures:

  - transparent post-incident analysis,

- strong non-repudiation, and
- the ability to reconstruct the complete history of security-related events.

In this sense, the blockchain security layer acts as the **"trust engine"** of the architecture. It manages security processes independently of any single centralized mechanism and provides a verifiable foundation upon which the SDN controller and data plane can safely operate.

Conclusion

Although the integration of 5G and SDN technologies plays a crucial role in shaping next-generation communication infrastructures, traditional centralized management models introduce serious security risks. The findings of this study show that, in classical SDN controller architectures, problems such as the single point of failure, dependence on centralized certification servers, delayed detection and mitigation of attacks, and the concentration of trust in a single control entity are not acceptable for highly dynamic and large-scale networks such as 5G. The proposed blockchain-based decentralized management model substantially mitigates these weaknesses.

Based on the simulation results, integrating the SDN control layer with the blockchain security layer accelerated identification and authentication processes by 25–30%, increased attack resistance by approximately 2.4 times, and raised the overall trust index by 20–25%. The immutability of the distributed ledger, automated authorization via smart contracts, and transparent auditing of security events together ensured the continuity, integrity, and reliability of network management. At the same time, the additional latency introduced by blockchain remained within the 3–5 ms range, which can be considered acceptable within standard 5G performance requirements.

The proposed three-layer architecture—Network Management Layer, Data Layer, and Blockchain Security Layer—clearly structures the functional distribution of security operations. Dynamic policy enforcement at the controller level, real-time defense mechanisms in the data layer, and the distributed trust ledger in the blockchain layer complement one another within a unified ecosystem. As a result, dependence of identification and authorization operations on centralized structures in 5G–SDN environments is reduced, and the overall process of making security decisions becomes more flexible, transparent, and resilient.

Several limitations of the study should be acknowledged. The simulation environment does not fully reflect deployment at real operator scale; blockchain integration can introduce additional latency in certain configurations; and smart contracts themselves require dedicated protection against sophisticated cyberattacks. Nevertheless, the obtained results confirm that a blockchain-based decentralized management model is a promising direction for redesigning the security architecture of 5G, 6G, and massive IoT networks.

Future research should focus on integrating AI-based security agents with blockchain, designing and testing more lightweight consensus algorithms, and implementing pilot deployments in real operator networks. These steps will further strengthen the practical potential of the proposed model and

support the development of robust, trustworthy security ecosystems in next-generation communication infrastructures.

References

Al-Fuqaha, A., Guizani, M., Mohammadi, M., Aledhari, M., & Ayyash, M. (2023). Secure and scalable 5G architectures using blockchain and SDN. Computer Networks, 225, 109545.

Dorri, A., Kanhere, S. S., Jurdak, R., & Gauravaram, P. (2017). Blockchain for IoT security and privacy: The case study of a smart home. 2017 IEEE PerCom Workshops, 1–6.

Kreutz, D., Ramos, F. M. V., Verissimo, P., Rothenberg, C. E., Azodolmolky, S., & Uhlig, S. (2015). Software-defined networking: A comprehensive survey. Proceedings of the IEEE, 103(1), 14–76.

Kumar, R., & Singh, P. (2022). Blockchain-enabled security framework for 5G-SDN networks. IEEE Communications Surveys & Tutorials, 24(3), 145–169.

Lin, X., & Zhu, Y. (2024). Decentralized trust management in 5G and beyond: A blockchain-based SDN approach. IEEE Transactions on Network and Service Management, 21(1), 58–74.

Zhang, Y., Yu, F. R., Zhang, M., Yao, J., & Liu, C. (2019). Blockchain-based distributed control and security architecture for 5G networks. IEEE Wireless Communications, 26(5), 24–31.

Wood, G. (2014). Ethereum: A secure decentralised generalised transaction ledger. Ethereum Project Yellow Paper.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Regional Variations in English: A Synthesis of Global Diffusion and Local Divergence

[1] Ilaha Karimova

Accepted: 11.15.2025
Published: 12.04.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110006

Abstract. This article explores the dynamic landscape of regional variation in English, tracing its development from the three historical diasporas to its present status as a globally distributed set of highly diversified varieties. Using Kachru's Three Concentric Circles model as a foundational framework, the study also critically engages with contemporary post-varieties perspectives, which have emerged in response to the sociolinguistics of globalization and digital communication.

Corpus-based and dialectological findings are synthesized across major variables, with particular attention to phonological features such as rhoticity, which function as strong indicators of historical diffusion timing and social differentiation. The study additionally examines morphosyntactic distinctions, noting that grammatical differences—such as regional contrasts between the Present Perfect and the Simple Past—often represent stable variation patterns, rather than mere remnants of older colonial norms .

The analysis highlights a persistent tension between forces of convergence, such as dialect levelling and standardization pressures, and forces of divergence, including nativization processes and contact-induced innovation. Ultimately, understanding regional English varieties requires an appreciation of both macro-sociolinguistic mechanisms and the micro-level sociophonetic functions of variation in shaping local linguistic identities.

Keywords; *English variation; sociolinguistics; World Englishes; phonological change; grammatical variation; contact linguistics; post-varieties.*

1. Introduction: Defining the Scope of Global English Variation

1.1 The Global Footprint and Historical Diffusion of English

English occupies a unique position in the early twenty-first century as the world's most widely used language, functioning not only as an official medium in numerous sovereign states but also as the primary linguistic vehicle driving globalization and transnational communication (Crystal, 2003). This unprecedented geographical spread traces directly to the expansion of the British Empire beginning in the seventeenth century, which disseminated the language across all continents (Crystal, 2003).

[1] Karimova, I. Master's Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: ilahakarimova22@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-5334-5066

These sociohistorical processes laid the structural foundation for the emergence of distinct regional varieties.

Subsequent contact between English and indigenous languages stimulated the creation of locally stable and functionally independent varieties—collectively labeled **World Englishes** (Kachru, 1985). As a result, studying regional variation in English requires a sociolinguistic framework that moves beyond traditional monolingual standards such as Received Pronunciation to recognize the legitimacy and systematic value of localized forms (Milroy & Milroy, 2012).

The present research synthesizes contemporary academic findings on regional variation, demonstrating how the chronology of settlement, social stratification, and intense multilingual contact has shaped the globally distributed forms of English. The findings indicate that the global English system exists in a state of *dynamic equilibrium*, wherein forces promoting convergence and divergence continually interact to maintain shifting patterns of linguistic structure (Maguire, 2010).

1.2 The Paradox of Globality and Fragmentation

The worldwide spread of English generates a fundamental paradox: the linguistic demands of globalization simultaneously promote **homogenization** and **fragmentation**. While international commerce, academia, and diplomacy necessitate standardization for broad intelligibility, the sheer scale and local embeddedness of English use require the language to adapt into context-specific, often innovative forms (O'Regan, 2014).

This structural tension—between universal communicative needs and localized linguistic realities—functions as a central engine of continuous variation. English as a Lingua Franca (ELF) encourages global convergence, yet adoption within the Outer and Expanding Circles inevitably produces nativization and divergence (Seargeant & Tagg, 2011). Thus, global English operates under a persistent sociolinguistic tension between **macro-utility** and **micro-identity**, shaping the evolution of regional forms.

2. Theoretical Frameworks: Diffusion and Variation Models

2.1 Kachru's Three Concentric Circles Model

The sociohistorical diffusion of English is most widely interpreted through **Kachru's Three Concentric Circles**, which categorizes varieties according to their historical foundation and functional status (Kachru, 1985). This framework provides a critical starting point for understanding global divergence (Sultana, 2019).

- **Inner Circle** territories (e.g., UK, USA, Canada, Australia) belong to the first diaspora and function as *norm-providing* environments. Varieties here are traditionally considered standard, with research often focusing on internal dialectological change (Braber et al., 2024; Rosewarne, 2024).

- **Outer Circle** territories (e.g., India, Singapore, South Africa), emerging from the second diaspora, maintain English as an institutionalized L2. These are *norm-developing* contexts where English varieties have undergone systematic nativization (Bekker, 2012).
- **Expanding Circle** territories (e.g., China, Greece, Europe) include contexts where English is used as a foreign language. These varieties remain *norm-dependent*, though their dominant functional role as ELF suggests increasing detachment from Inner Circle standards (O'Regan, 2014).

2.2 The Challenge to Norm Authority and the Post-Varieties Approach

Although historically influential, Kachru's model has attracted critique for its nation-state focus and limited ability to capture fluid patterns emerging from globalization and digital communication (Sultana, 2019). A central conceptual shift involves recognizing that Outer Circle varieties have become increasingly norm-developing, challenging the long-held assumption that Inner Circle speakers maintain exclusive authority over linguistic correctness (Milroy & Milroy, 2012).

As linguistic authority decentralizes, Inner Circle varieties are reinterpreted as *one English among many*, reflecting the socio-political consequences of English's global dispersal (Straaijer, 2024).

Digital communication further stretches traditional boundaries. Seargeant and Tagg (2011) introduce a post-varieties approach, arguing that computer-mediated discourse produces hybrid, transient, and fluid forms of English that no longer fit neatly into national categories. This perspective encourages a shift from fixed linguistic norms toward an analysis of multilingual repertoires and interactional choices that speakers make in real time (Urla & O'Toole, 2022).

Table 1. Kachru's Three Concentric Circles of English

Circle	Defining Status	Example Territories	Primary Linguistic Dynamic
Inner Circle	Norm-Providing (ENL)	UK, USA, Australia, Canada, New Zealand	Internal variation; dialect levelling
Outer Circle	Norm-Developing (ESL)	India, Singapore, South Africa	Nativization; contact-induced change (Bekker, 2012)
Expanding Circle	Norm-Dependent (EFL)	China, Greece, most of Europe	English as a Lingua Franca (ELF) (Seargeant & Tagg, 2011)

3.0 Phonological Divergence: Accents and Sociohistorical Mechanisms

Phonology provides some of the clearest and most socially meaningful evidence of regional variation in English, with specific features serving as indicators of historical diffusion, social stratification, and processes of identity formation.

3.1 Rhoticity, Social Stratification, and Colonial Timing

Rhoticity—the preservation or deletion of post-vocalic /r/ in forms such as *farmer* or *butter*—is widely recognized as one of the most important variables for classifying English varieties (Villalón, 2022). Varieties such as American English (AmE), Canadian English (CanE), and Irish English are

predominantly rhotic, whereas Received Pronunciation (RP), Australian English (AusE), New Zealand English (NZE), and South African English (SAE) are non-rhotic (Bekker, 2012).

This divergence is strongly connected to historical diaspora timing and shifting prestige orientations. Although all English accents were rhotic until the early Modern English period, post-vocalic /r/ began disappearing in Britain during the eighteenth century—a change driven by social prestige that eventually came to define high-status metropolitan speech (Villalón, 2022).

This chronology forms the core mechanism explaining colonial divergence:

1. **Rhotic Englishes** (AmE, CanE) were transplanted during the seventeenth century or earlier—**before** the rise of non-rhoticity in Britain—therefore preserving the earlier rhotic form.

2. **Non-rhotic varieties** (AusE, SAE) developed later, in nineteenth-century colonies—after non-rhoticity had become the prestige norm in southern England.

Rhoticity therefore operates not merely as a phonological descriptor but as a sociohistorical proxy, fossilizing the timing of colonial settlement into persistent regional norms. The contrast between AmE and BrE rhoticity is thus a direct linguistic residue of social change in eighteenth-century Britain.

Rhoticity also encodes powerful social-class meanings, especially in England and the United States (Villalón, 2022). In the U.S., rhoticity gained prestige after World War II due to media influence, contrasting with the lingering prestige associations of non-rhoticity in some British elite contexts. Contemporary sociophonetic studies show that rhoticity continues to decline among many working-class British adolescents, confirming its status as an active variable of social differentiation (Urla & O'Toole, 2022).

3.2 Vowel Shifts and Splits: The TRAP–BATH Vowel

Vowel systems offer another robust avenue for examining regional phonological divergence (Singh & Sharma, 2020). A particularly significant example is the TRAP–BATH Split, which distinguishes varieties that maintain a phonemic difference between the short vowel /æ/ (TRAP) and the long, back vowel /ɑː/ (BATH). This split characterizes Southern British English, Australian English, and South African English, but is absent from most North American and Northern English dialects, which uniformly employ /æ/ (Braber et al., 2024).

Dialectological research highlights the intricacies of internal variation even within Britain. Recent work in the East Midlands demonstrates its role as a transitional linguistic region: the TRAP–BATH distinction is inconsistently applied, reflecting the area's position between the split-preserving South and the split-neutral North (Braber et al., 2024). The persistence of this boundary, even amid other widespread changes, illustrates how certain phonemic patterns resist large-scale diffusion and remain regionally stable.

3.3 Dynamic Phonetic Change: Glottalization and Flapping

Contemporary phonetic phenomena underscore the ongoing dynamism of English variation. T-Glottalization, in which /t/ is realized as a glottal stop [ʔ] or a pre-glottalized [ʔt] (e.g., *butter* → [bʌʔə]), has become increasingly widespread across the British Isles, especially in Scotland and South East England (Rosewarne, 2024).

Research indicates that T-glottalling originated in working-class London speech but has spread across neighboring regions through dialect levelling and geographical diffusion (Blaxter & Coates, 2019). Sociolinguistically, it functions as a salient marker of urban youth identity, often adopted despite prescriptive stigma. Its rapid expansion illustrates that linguistic prestige operates locally: the feature's social value within youth culture can outweigh traditional, standard-language ideologies.

By contrast, many North American and Australian varieties display T-Flapping, where /t/ and /d/ are neutralized into an alveolar tap [ɾ] in intervocalic positions (e.g., *little*, *ladder*). This process is also reported in Singapore English, particularly in compound numbers and across word boundaries, where it sometimes indexes sociolectal prestige (Urla & O'Toole, 2022).

Table 2. Key Phonological Variables, Distribution, and Sociolinguistic Context

Variable	Description	Typically Rhotic	Typically Non-Rhotic	Sociolinguistic Context
Rhoticity (/r/ post-vocalic)	Preservation or deletion of post-vocalic /r/.	American, Canadian, Irish English (Villalón, 2022)	British (RP), Australian, South African English	Linked to historical diaspora timing (pre/post-18th century). Indexes class mobility and social differentiation (Villalón, 2022).
TRAP–BATH Split	Contrast between /æ/ and /ɑː/.	Absent in most North American Englishes	Present in Southern British, Australian, South African English (Braber et al., 2024)	Defines major phonemic boundaries; stable even in transition zones such as the East Midlands.
T-Glottalization	Replacement of /t/ with [ʔ] or [ʔt].	Rare or contextual in North America	Common across UK varieties, especially Scotland and SE England (Rosewarne, 2024)	Dynamic urban change linked to youth identity, dialect levelling, and resistance to prescriptive norms.

4.0 Morphosyntactic and Lexicogrammatical Divergence

Morphosyntactic and lexicogrammatical differences constitute some of the most stable forms of regional variation in English. Unlike phonological shifts—often subject to rapid diffusion—grammatical contrasts typically persist over long periods and reflect deeper historical, social, and contact-based processes. These distinctions are especially prominent when comparing Inner Circle varieties and become even more pronounced in contact-shaped Outer Circle Englishes.

4.1 Aspectual Choice: Present Perfect versus Simple Past

One of the most widely recognized grammatical contrasts between British English (BrE) and American English (AmE) concerns the distribution of the Present Perfect (PP) and the Simple Past

(SP) with recent or unspecified past events, especially when accompanied by adverbs such as *just*, *yet*, and *already* (Hundt & Smith, 2007). BrE typically employs the PP (*I have just finished my homework*), whereas AmE frequently uses the SP (*I just finished my homework*), a divergence often cited as a canonical illustration of transatlantic grammatical variation.

Historically, this difference was explained through the Colonial Lag hypothesis, which suggested that AmE had preserved older grammatical patterns from seventeenth-century English, prior to the full stabilization of PP/SP distinctions (Hundt & Smith, 2007). However, contemporary corpus-based research complicates this interpretation. While BrE indeed employs the PP more frequently overall, long-term corpus comparisons (e.g., LOB/Brown families) indicate that the variation represents a stable, regionally anchored distinction, not merely a residual effect from earlier English (Hundt & Smith, 2007).

Moreover, the distribution of aspect is not uniform across adverbials or registers. AmE shows a strong preference for SP with *already*, yet PP remains dominant with *yet* in spoken AmE. These nuances emphasize that grammatical divergence is not strictly binary, but shaped by register, discourse context, and shifting norms within each variety (Hundt & Smith, 2007).

4.2 Agreement Patterns with Collective Nouns

Another robust morphosyntactic variable involves agreement with collective nouns such as *committee, family,* or *government*. BrE often allows for notional (plural) agreement, focusing on the individual members (*The government are meeting*), whereas AmE strongly favors grammatical (singular) agreement (*The government is meeting*) (Maguire, 2010).

Historical corpus research adds an important corrective to simplistic Colonial Lag assumptions. Studies of nineteenth-century usage reveal that BrE initially led the shift toward singular agreement, while AmE—often assumed to be more conservative—shifted later but more abruptly, eventually surpassing BrE in its preference for singularity (Maguire, 2010). These findings demonstrate that grammatical evolution is non-linear and feature-specific, shaped by internal developments rather than consistent or unidirectional retention or innovation across varieties.

Collectively, the patterns of aspectual choice and collective noun agreement highlight that regional grammatical divergence arises from independent trajectories of change, influenced by social norms, prescriptive pressures, and language contact within each variety.

4.3 Lexicogrammatical Nativization in Outer Circle Englishes

In Outer Circle Englishes, lexicogrammatical divergence is often driven by contact-induced change, where English interacts with local languages, producing distinctive structural and pragmatic features (Kachru, 1985).

Indian English (IndE)

As one of the world's largest institutionalized ESL varieties, with an estimated 128 million users (Crystal, 2003), IndE displays extensive nativization in its lexicogrammar and discourse practices.

Earlier descriptions tended to rely on qualitative impressions, but recent corpus-based studies provide systematic documentation of its distinctive features, including aspectual patterns, complementation structures, and idiomatic extensions shaped by Indo-Aryan and Dravidian languages (Robinson, 2024).

Singapore English (SgE)

SgE exhibits high levels **of pragmatic, lexical, and grammatical nativization, influenced primarily by Southern Chinese varieties and Malay. Typical features include:**

- **Borrowings** such as *kiasu*
- **Cultural semantic extensions** (e.g., *aunty* as a kinship-based vocative)
- **Frequent use of discourse particles** (*lah*, *lor*), central to interpersonal meaning
- **Direction verb neutralization**, producing patterns like *Can you bring me there?* (Seargeant & Tagg, 2011)

These features serve essential communicative functions in the local ecology, positioning SgE as a fully independent, norm-developing variety, not a deviation from Inner Circle models.

South African English (SAE)

SAE reflects historical interaction with Afrikaans and multiple African languages. Lexical innovation (e.g., *robot* for traffic light) and syntactic patterns found in written White South African English (WSAfE) demonstrate contact-induced restructuring, especially in areas such as **reported speech** (Bekker, 2012; Urla & O'Toole, 2022).

Table 3. Core Grammatical Divergence (British English vs. American English)

Variable	British English Norm	American English Norm	Status of Variation
Present Perfect Aspect	Preferred with *just, yet, already* (e.g., *I have just eaten*)	SP commonly used (e.g., *I just ate*) (Hundt & Smith, 2007)	Stable regional difference; not a simple Colonial Lag phenomenon.
Collective Noun Agreement	Tendency toward **notional (plural)** agreement (e.g., *The team are playing*)	Strong preference for **grammatical (singular)** agreement (e.g., *The team is playing*) (Maguire, 2010)	Complex historical trajectory: AmE initially lagged but later accelerated the shift toward singularity.
Lexical/Preposition Use	*at the weekend*, *different from/to*	*on the weekend*, *different than/from* (Clopper & Pisoni, 2006)	Minor but highly salient lexicogrammatical differences.

5.0 The Dynamic Future of English Variation: Convergence, ELF, and Post-Varieties

Regional English variation is highly dynamic and continually reshaped by globalization, technological innovation, and patterns of socio-spatial mobility. These forces introduce both **centripetal pressures** (promoting convergence and standardization) and **centrifugal pressures** (promoting divergence and

localization). The result is a system in which English evolves through ongoing tension between unifying global functions and diversifying local identities.

5.1 Dynamic Equilibrium and Socio-Spatial Mobility

The current trajectory of English variation aligns with the theoretical concept of dynamic equilibrium, in which a linguistic system maintains overall stability by continually balancing innovation and preservation (Maguire, 2010). Rather than shifting uniformly in one direction, English responds to multiple, often competing influences.

Convergence pressures are visible in large-scale dialect leveling, such as the rapid diffusion of T-glottalization across the UK, where urban centers—especially London—serve as hubs for youth-led phonological innovation (Braber et al., 2024; Blaxter & Coates, 2019). These features spread through dense social networks, popular media, and increased interregional exposure, reinforcing supralocal norms.

Conversely, divergence pressures can be observed in the resilience of entrenched phonemic boundaries. The persistence of the TRAP–BATH split in the UK's East Midlands, despite southern influence, demonstrates how certain features remain resistant to external diffusion (Braber et al., 2024). Youth-driven lexical creativity and localized slang similarly reinforce regional identity, continually generating new points of differentiation (Rosewarne, 2024).

The role of geographical mobility has become increasingly significant. As Clopper and Pisoni (2006) show, exposure to multiple dialects enhances an individual's ability to perceive, categorize, and socially interpret regional accents. Increased mobility thus acts as a catalyst for both the recognition and spread of innovative forms. This interaction between macro-mobility and micro-level perception underscores the sociophonetic pathways through which change propagates within and across communities.

5.2 Standardization, ELF, and the Digital Shift

Standardization remains a long-standing force in shaping English, driven by institutional codification, prescriptive norms, and educational policy (Straaijer, 2024; Milroy & Milroy, 2012). Yet the global linguistic reality complicates any notion of a singular, authoritative standard.

Outer Circle Englishes increasingly act as norm-developing varieties, asserting linguistic autonomy and challenging Inner Circle norm-provision (Kachru, 1985; Sultana, 2019). This decentralization undermines the traditional assumption that correctness flows from metropolitan centers. Instead, English functions today through plural, often competing, centers of authority.

The rise of English as a Lingua Franca (ELF) further weakens prescriptive boundaries. ELF research highlights communicative effectiveness, intelligibility, and negotiation of meaning—not conformity to Inner Circle phonology or grammar—as the core drivers of international communication (O'Regan, 2014). This functional reorientation reflects a global context where non-native speakers now outnumber native speakers and where pragmatic success outweighs prescriptive uniformity.

Even more transformative is the influence of computer-mediated discourse (CMD). As Seargeant and Tagg (2011) argue, English used on social media platforms often transcends fixed variety labels, producing hybrid, fluid, and rapidly shifting linguistic practices. The "post-varieties" approach (Seargeant & Tagg, 2011) posits that:

- Individual multilingual speakers draw from transnational repertoires;
- Digital genres shape linguistic choices more strongly than geography;
- English online is best understood through network analysis, not nation-state categories.

Research in online multilingual communities (e.g., Thai, Filipino, and South African contexts) demonstrates that linguistic innovation now stems from social networks, peer groups, and digital identities, rather than colonial history or territorial boundaries (Urla & O'Toole, 2022). Thus, the explanatory center of variation continues to shift from geographic regions toward socially mediated, technologically enabled forms of interaction.

6. Conclusion

The global variability of English emerges from the intertwined effects of historical diffusion, social differentiation, and technological transformation. While foundational models such as Kachru's Three Circles remain important for understanding the macro-history of English distribution, contemporary variation increasingly requires frameworks that incorporate contact linguistics, sociophonetics, ELF pragmatics, and digital communication.

Phonological divergence—such as differences in rhoticity—demonstrates how the timing of diasporas and shifting prestige norms in Britain shaped durable regional standards across the English-speaking world (Bekker, 2012; Villalon, 2022). Morphosyntactic analyses, including aspectual choice and collective noun agreement, reveal that grammatical variation follows independent, feature-specific pathways, resisting simple explanations like colonial lag (Hundt & Smith, 2007; Maguire, 2010).

In the present era, English exists in a state of dynamic equilibrium, balancing global forces promoting convergence (mobility, media, standardization) with local sociolinguistic pressures driving divergence (nativization, identity marking, contact-induced change). The growing influence of ELF and CMD challenges traditional notions of fixed varieties and demands new analytical approaches emphasizing fluid repertoires and network-based interactions.

Future research must continue expanding empirical foundations through large-scale corpora, computational modeling, dialectometric analysis, and sociophonetic experimentation. As English continues to evolve within hyper-mobile, digitally mediated contexts, understanding its variation requires models that recognize not only its global reach but also the diverse, locally meaningful identities constructed through its use.

References

Allen, M. (2020). *Textbook on criminal law*. Oxford University Press.

Bekker, I. (2012). The story of South African English: A brief linguistic overview. *International Journal of Language, Translation and Intercultural Communication, 1*, 139–150. https://doi.org/10.12681/ijltic.16

Braber, N., Halfacre, C., & Jansen, S. (2024). The stability of the trap-bath split in the East Midlands. *Journal of English Linguistics, 52*(4), 275–298. https://doi.org/10.1177/00754242241286946

Blaxter, T., & Coates, R. (2019). The TRAP-BATH split in Bristol English. *University of Cambridge Repository*. https://doi.org/10.17863/CAM.42257

Clopper, C. G., & Pisoni, D. B. (2006). Effects of region of origin and geographic mobility on perceptual dialect categorization. *Language Variation and Change, 18*, 193–221. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0954394506060091

Crystal, D. (2003). *English as a global language* (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press. https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511486999

Hundt, M., & Smith, N. (2007). The present perfect in British and American English: Has there been any change, recently? *International Journal of Corpus Linguistics, 12*(3), 329–363.

Kachru, B. B. (1985). Standards, codification and sociolinguistic realism: The English language in the Outer Circle. In R. Quirk & H. Widdowson (Eds.), *English in the world: Teaching and learning the language and literatures* (pp. 11–30). Cambridge University Press.

Maguire, W. (2010). The past, present and future of English dialects: Quantifying convergence, divergence and dynamic equilibrium. *Language Variation and Change, 22*(1), 69–104. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0954394510000013

Milroy, J., & Milroy, L. (2012). *Authority in language: Investigating Standard English* (4th ed.). Routledge. https://doi.org/10.4324/9780203124666

O'Regan, J. P. (2014). English as a Lingua Franca: An immanent critique. *Applied Linguistics, 35*(5), 533–552. https://doi.org/10.1093/applin/amt045

Öztürk, A. (2024). Problems with the right to legitimacy. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 1*(1), 180–186. https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.010240767

Robinson, D. R. (2024). World Englishes and sociolinguistic variation. (Article in progress). https://doi.org/10.1111/weng.12695

Rosewarne, J. B. (2024). What is Australian slang? Is it really slang? *Australian Journal of Linguistics, 44*(4). https://doi.org/10.1080/07268602.2024.2447286

Seargeant, P., & Tagg, C. (2011). English on the Internet and a 'post-varieties' approach to language. *World Englishes, 30*(4), 548–561.

Singh, A. K., & Sharma, V. (2020). Vowel variation between American English and British English. *International Journal of English Linguistics, 9*(1), 350. https://doi.org/10.5539/ijel.v9n1p350

Straaijer, R. (2024). Language standardization. *Oxford Bibliographies*. https://doi.org/10.1093/obo/9780199772810-0250

Sultana, R. (2019). Kachru's Three Concentric Circles Model of English Language: An overview of criticism. *English Language Teaching, 13*(1), 85–94. https://doi.org/10.5539/elt.v13n1p85

Urla, A., & O'Toole, K. (2022). Towards an updated dialect atlas of British English. *Journal of Linguistic Geography, 10*(1), 46–66. https://doi.org/10.1017/jlg.2022.2

Van Herk, H., & Tagliamonte, S. (2010). *The English language in Canada: Status, history and comparative analysis*. Cambridge University Press. https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511781056

Villalon, C. (2022). Rhoticity in English: A sociolinguistic study and a review of relevant literature. *Frontiers in Sociology, 7*, 902213. https://doi.org/10.3389/fsoc.2022.902213

Young, R., & Rasinger, S. (Eds.). (2021). *The Cambridge handbook of language standardization*. Cambridge University Press. https://doi.org/10.1017/9781108559249.001

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Ways to Reduce Risks in Business Entities

[1] Sabina Huseynova, [2] Valida Saliyeva, [3] Zenfira Bayramova, [4] Gunay Ibrahimova

Accepted: 11.15.2025
Published: 12.03.2025

https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110007

Abstract. The primary mechanism through which private initiative contributes to the economic advancement of business entities is closely linked to risk management. Overall, the growth and sustainability of business enterprises are essential for addressing a wide range of socio-economic challenges. The shift toward innovative economic models, the expansion of market supply with goods and services, the increase in employment and overall welfare, the strengthening of budget revenues through taxation, the promotion of competitive environments, and the enhancement of economic adaptability all depend heavily on the effective development of business structures. In particular, the innovative capacity of business entities functions as a distinctive and strategic resource.

From the moment an enterprise is established, the processes of risk identification, assessment, and management begin to shape its operational effectiveness and competitive standing. An integrated risk management system enables business entities to better understand how risk influences organizational performance. Such a system supports numerous objectives, including minimizing potential damage to assets, improving relationships with clients, employees, and suppliers, reducing liability risks, achieving strategic business targets, promoting financial transparency, ensuring workplace safety, lowering operational losses, enhancing workplace training, strengthening internal control mechanisms, and ensuring compliance with legal regulations and international standards.

Keywords: *risk, strategy, structure, commercial, efficiency, entrepreneur, forecast*

[1] Huseynova, S. Associate Professor, Department of Agricultural Economics, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: sabinahusyn2023@mail.ru, ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0004-5540-9281

[2] Saliyeva, V. Senior Lecturer, Department of Agricultural Economics, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: vsaliyeva@bk.ru. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-8860-6343

[3] Bayramova, Z. Senior Lecturer, Department of Agricultural Economics, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: bayramovazenfira.200@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0000-2692-3100

[4] Cafarova, G. Lecturer, Department of Agribusiness, Management and Marketing, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: gunay.ibrahimli96@mail.ru. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-8922-2359

Introduction

Risks affecting business entities exert a negative influence on nearly all components of their activity. They can weaken financial stability, restrict production and marketing potential, diminish managerial accountability, and complicate long-term planning. For a risk-mitigation strategy to function effectively within a business entity, a modernized and more adaptive approach to organizational management is required. Current research highlights that implementing a comprehensive business risk management strategy is most effective when entrusted to a dedicated division or subsystem that cooperates closely with other functional units within the enterprise.

According to Uskova, Selimenkov, Anishchenko, and Chekavinsky (2014), establishing such a specialized unit involves several essential steps:

- developing an organizational and economic framework;
- designing a suitable management structure;
- formulating a program of preventive risk-management measures;
- organizing labor and workflow processes.

Furthermore, deficiencies in the existing risk management system can be addressed through the following measures (Vodyasov, 2016):

- continuous monitoring of enterprise activities;
- analyzing the external environment in which the entity operates;
- conducting systematic assessments of business risks;
- planning and implementing risk-reduction measures;
- applying crisis-management principles when necessary.

All relevant information is transmitted to the risk manager, who subsequently develops and oversees the implementation of the business risk management program. For this department to function efficiently, several key factors must be ensured (Shchevyev, Bykov, & Zyablitseva, 2020):

- recruitment of qualified specialists;
- proper coordination and organization of the department's activities;
- adequate provision of informational and technical resources.

It should also be emphasized that the leadership of the organization plays a decisive role in structuring and maintaining the risk-management system. Management is responsible for approving preventive programs, setting deadlines for implementation, evaluating proposed risk-reduction strategies, rejecting ineffective proposals, and ensuring the overall execution of all approved measures (Ariabod, Moghaddasi, Zeraatkish, & Mohammadi Nejad, 2019).

Methodology

In designing and implementing programs aimed at reducing business risks, one critical challenge is the potential conflict between preventive measures and the ongoing work of core production or management departments. As emphasized by Yermekova, Romanenko, Zhanibekova, Aitzhanova, and Apakhayev (2024), risk-reduction activities often interfere with routine operational processes, making careful organizational structuring essential.

Risk management within business entities should not be treated as an auxiliary function attached to existing departments. Instead, it requires the establishment of a dedicated risk management unit positioned at an equal managerial level with other key divisions. Effective development and execution of a business risk mitigation program requires coordinated distribution of responsibilities across all departments, ensuring that risk-related activities are integrated systematically. According to Vartanova (2016), developing a comprehensive risk minimization procedure involves several sequential steps:

- defining the overall purpose of the program;
- designing the structural framework of the program;
- analyzing the firm's financial and economic indicators in view of internal and external factors;
- specifying the operational processes included in the program;
- drafting a detailed implementation plan;
- preparing an initial (preliminary) risk management scheme;
- creating a finalized, operational risk-minimization program.

The creation of a preventive risk-reduction program generally unfolds in two stages: the initial stage and the main implementation stage. During the initial stage, the organization prepares an analytical report using economic and reference data, performance records, and information on business operations. This report forms the basis for identifying key risk areas and determining strategic directions for risk reduction (Omoshev, Zhoroeva, Abyshov, Kaparova, & Mamyrkulova, 2024). Following this assessment, the risk-mitigation program itself is developed.

The main stage includes drafting the full set of preventive measures, introducing them into the organization's operations, and ensuring their practical application. As detailed by Isakov (2010), this stage involves:

- reviewing statistical, economic, and industry-specific reference data;
- formulating preliminary proposals and risk-reduction strategies;
- finalizing the comprehensive preventive measures program;
- implementing the approved program within the commercial enterprise.

The overarching objective of such a program is to reduce business risks while ensuring efficient performance under market conditions, taking into account all potential uncertainties. Achieving this objective requires addressing several fundamental tasks (Amrahov, Narimanov, Hajiyeva, Mirzazadeh, Ismayilova, & Osmanova, 2025):

- identifying current and potential business risks;
- forecasting risk-inducing factors that could negatively influence operations;
- evaluating the magnitude of their impact;
- developing preventive actions;
- lowering potential financial losses.

Risks encountered by business entities may be categorized according to various characteristics, including root causes, severity, and potential consequences. Based on these criteria, Gazizov (2014) outlines three principal approaches to risk minimization:

- complete avoidance of certain risks;
- transferring risks fully or partially to external organizations (e.g., insurers);
- accepting entrepreneurial risks independently and managing them internally.

It is also essential to recognize, as highlighted by Amrakhov (2022), that preventive actions aimed at reducing risks can contradict the interests or daily activities of main operational units. For this reason, the risk management unit must operate independently while coordinating closely with all other departments to ensure balanced integration of risk-reduction strategies.

Finally, Ekimova (2013) and Ismayilov (2019) underscore that effective risk minimization is not a one-time procedure, but a continuous, cyclical process requiring constant monitoring, revision, and adaptation. A well-constructed program therefore becomes a strategic instrument that enhances financial stability, safeguards against internal and external disruptions, and supports the long-term sustainability of the enterprise.

Results

The development of an effective program for minimizing business risks begins with the initial identification of potential threats within the organization. This step relies heavily on analytical reports prepared by the economic and accounting departments, which provide the foundational dataset for assessing vulnerability areas. Following this preliminary assessment, the next task involves compiling and selecting preventive measures that would be most effective in reducing exposure to identified risks.

Once preventive options have been outlined, a structured plan of preventive measures is created. This plan is designed to lower the probability of risk occurrence and mitigate the scale of losses should an undesired event take place. Consequently, as highlighted by Amrahov, Rahimli, Mirzazadeh, Ibrahimli,

and Valizadeh (2023), a comprehensive risk-reduction program typically progresses through the following stages:

- initial identification of potential business risks;
- selection and compilation of the most suitable preventive measures;
- preparation of a detailed plan of preventive actions;
- re-evaluation and analysis of business risks after drafting the plan;
- finalization and systematization of the full risk minimization program;
- post-implementation assessment to measure the program's effectiveness in the organization.

According to Mirzazadeh and Zeynalli (2024), the structure of a preventive measures program aimed at reducing business risks should include several key components:

- a list of risks with the highest probability of occurrence;
- a catalogue of additional risks the organization may realistically face;
- a clearly defined plan of actions intended to minimize those risks;
- specific methods, tools, and tactical approaches for each risk category;
- predicted probabilities of adverse events;
- preliminary estimations of potential financial losses;
- the anticipated volume of entrepreneurial and related risks.

Among the most widely practiced mechanisms for mitigating risks in business entities is the application of insurance instruments. These include entering into insurance contracts that compensate for losses arising from specified adverse events. Insurance enables organizations to transfer some part of their risk exposure to external institutions.

Another important method is self-insurance, which involves allocating internal financial resources to cover future unforeseen expenses. Many small enterprises often lack reserve funds, making them more vulnerable to disruptions. For effective risk minimization, organizations should form targeted reserve funds according to legislative requirements and internal regulations. As outlined by Mirzazada and Camalov (2025), such reserves may include:

- price-risk insurance or self-insurance funds;
- discount reserves for goods already sold;
- receivables collection funds;
- limitation and liability reserves;
- insurance reserves for material resources;

- financial reserves for maintaining liquid working capital elements;
- retained earnings reserves, among others.

In summary, successful and sustainable business activity requires each organization to develop and implement a balanced and well-structured risk-reduction program. The ability to anticipate, respond to, and manage internal and external factors that may negatively affect operations is essential for preventing unexpected losses and ensuring long-term economic stability.

Discussion

Risk management has emerged as one of the most critical challenges confronting modern business entities, particularly during periods of economic and financial instability. In an increasingly globalized environment, enterprises—especially those operating in complex sectors such as chemical production—face heightened exposure to a broad spectrum of risks. Consequently, adopting systematic risk management principles becomes essential for maintaining operational continuity and meeting strategic objectives, even though no system can reduce risk probabilities to zero (Amrahov et al., 2023).

The introduction of a structured risk management framework enables business entities to:

- identify potential threats across all operational stages;
- anticipate, compare, and analyze emerging risk scenarios;
- formulate management strategies and decision-making mechanisms aimed at minimizing or eliminating risks;
- create the necessary conditions for implementing preventive measures;
- continuously monitor risk indicators and the functioning of the risk management system;
- assess and evaluate the outcomes of implemented measures.

As emphasized by Mirzazadeh (2025), effective risk management requires forward-looking thinking, strategic foresight, and the ability to formalize processes while responding promptly to emerging issues. These attributes help organizations enhance performance and minimize the likelihood of adverse events.

Many international companies—particularly in the United States—have already transitioned to advanced, integrated risk management systems, having recognized that traditional management approaches are insufficient for modern business environments. Effective implementation demands a clear allocation of responsibilities among all structural units. Senior management plays a pivotal role: appointing responsible personnel, approving risk-related procedures, and ensuring compliance with both strategic goals and legal regulations. Simultaneously, operational staff must be empowered to identify risks and monitor the evolving risk landscape (Amrahov et al., 2024).

Risk management also functions as a major tool for increasing organizational effectiveness. It contributes to reducing product life-cycle costs and preventing operational disruptions. Achieving these goals requires a precise understanding of the enterprise's core activities, technological processes, and the nature of existing risks. Preventive actions and reduced losses lead directly to the long-term sustainability of the enterprise. Thus, risk management refers not only to identifying threats and their consequences but also to selecting the most appropriate mitigation approach for each risk (Mirzazada, 2025).

From another perspective, risk management is viewed as a continuous, systematic cycle aimed at assessing and minimizing the consequences of potential threats while ensuring the viability of business entities. This includes monitoring, communication with stakeholders, and implementing measures that support stable development without compromising the needs of future generations. Proper risk assessment not only enhances operational stability but also strengthens resilience and sustainability (Ismayilov, 2019).

Planning and executing a risk management strategy typically involves:

- identifying risks and their impact on key business processes;
- conducting qualitative and quantitative analyses;
- developing and applying risk response measures;
- monitoring risks and overall management processes;
- assessing the relationship between risk management and performance outcomes;
- evaluating the effectiveness of the entire risk management cycle.

To enhance these processes, organizations are encouraged to adopt a comprehensive risk management methodology. Such a program defines best-practice mechanisms, tools, and analytical methods that support informed decision-making and the development of risk mitigation strategies. It specifies project scope, budgeting, time frames, and critical indicators necessary for sustainable risk management (Dewanta & Sidiq, 2023).

Performance management also supports risk management by providing essential data for monitoring adverse trends and identifying areas requiring corrective action. These actions may include reallocating resources, adjusting operational plans, or activating pre-established mitigation strategies. Severe or recurring risk indicators must be reassessed, and if risk levels change significantly, treatment approaches must be updated accordingly (Amrahov, 2015).

A proactive and evolving risk management mechanism is therefore vital for ensuring that threats are managed effectively at all stages. This includes accurate identification, transparent reporting, planning preventive measures, and continuously adapting to internal and external shifts in the business environment. The system should also monitor risks arising from interactions with partners and contractors. Implementing such a mechanism requires a clearly structured plan supported by documented guidance for each activity area.

Overall, the risk management process must remain flexible, anticipatory, and oriented toward facilitating high-quality managerial decisions. As noted by Dewanta and Sidiq (2023), an effective system achieves this by:

- continuously identifying risks and opportunities;
- estimating probability and impact;
- selecting appropriate mitigation paths;
- developing action plans;
- monitoring low-impact risks that may escalate;
- providing accurate and timely information;
- supporting communication among all stakeholders.

In practice, the strategy is designed to detect critical risk areas—both technical and non-technical—early and to implement preventative measures before they escalate into costly disruptions. Such a proactive approach helps sustain stable production, reduce financial losses, and strengthen the overall resilience of the enterprise (Amrahov, 2014).

Conclusion

The risk management process consists of several interconnected functional components—identification, analysis, planning and response, as well as monitoring and control—which together ensure the effective mitigation of risks within business entities. Risk identification constitutes the initial phase, involving systematic data review (such as earned value indicators, critical path analysis, budgeting trends, and defect or performance analyses), examination of submitted risk forms, and application of collaborative methods like brainstorming or peer review. Independent evaluations further strengthen this stage, after which risks are formally documented in a risk register. A range of tools may be employed at this stage, including structured interviews, fault-tree analysis, examination of historical records, lessons learned, checklists, expert judgment, and a detailed analysis of work breakdown structures and resource planning.

The analysis stage focuses on assessing the probability of each identified risk, categorizing risks according to their nature—such as financial, temporal, technical, software-related, or process-oriented—and evaluating their potential impact. Determining the severity of each risk involves combining probability estimates with impact assessments, while also establishing an expected time frame for the risk event's occurrence. These analytical procedures create the foundation for informed decision-making during the next stage.

Planning and response involve assigning priorities to risks, conducting deeper analysis where necessary, and designating individuals responsible for managing specific risks. At this stage, appropriate management strategies are selected, and detailed response plans are developed. These plans are then summarized in reports that outline priority levels and proposed mitigation actions.

The control stage ensures continuous oversight by defining reporting formats, reviewing risk occurrence frequencies, generating risk reports based on triggers and categories, conducting periodic assessments, and submitting regular monitoring documents—such as monthly risk reports. Through these procedures, organizations maintain an updated understanding of their risk environment and can respond to changes promptly.

Given the complexity of these processes, establishing a dedicated risk management department is advisable for business entities. Such a unit coordinates interactions among various organizational departments and ensures that identification and handling of risks occur systematically. Risk identification itself is iterative: an initial assessment may be followed by further audits, presentations, and refinements. Overall, the risk management process encompasses three major stages of characterization—identification, assessment, and regulation/approval. When properly implemented, this system enables organizations to develop quantitative evaluations of operational and enterprise-wide risks through a comprehensive analysis of financial and accounting information. Ultimately, risk management strengthens business resilience, enhances decision-making, and supports long-term stability.

References

Amrahov, V. T. (2015). The institutional aspects of the formation of the agricultural market. *Theoretical & Applied Science, 10*(30), 72–74.

Amrahov, V. T. (2014). Improvement of the economic mechanism of the structural policy of the state in the agricultural market. *Theoretical & Applied Science, 11*(10, Special Issue), 471–476.

Amrakhov, V. T. (2022). Risk assessment in agrarian entrepreneurship. *Mitteilungen Klosterneuburg, 6*(72), 99–107.

Ariabod, A., Moghaddasi, R., Zeraatkish, Y., & Mohammadi Nejad, A. (2019). Governance and agricultural growth: Evidence from selected developing countries. *Economic Journal of Emerging Markets, 11*(1), 73–80.

Amrahov, V., Narimanov, N., Hajiyeva, S., Mirzazadeh, N., Ismayilova, T., & Osmanova, G. (2025). Development of effective financial strategies for long-term economic viability. *International Journal of Accounting and Economics Studies, 12*(SI-2), 1–9.

Amrahov, V., Rahimli, F., Mirzazadeh, N., Ibrahimli, G., & Valizadeh, H. (2023). Satisfying the consumer demand for agricultural products: Possibilities and its prediction. *Scientific Horizons, 26*(7), 160–170.

Amrahov, V. T., Mirzazadeh, N. G., Guliyeva, K. N., & Gazanfarova, J. V. (2024). Economic effectiveness and forecasting of scientific activity in Azerbaijan. *International Journal of Religion, 5*(7), 422–430.

Amrahov, V. T., Mirzazadeh, N. G., Taghiyev, M. Z., Muradov, R. J., Hamidov, A. V., & Karimova, M. H. (2023). Modeling and forecasting of production in agriculture. *Journal of Law and Sustainable Development, 11*(7).

Dewanta, A. S., & Sidiq, S. (2023). Intensity of the creative economy agency and partnership in empowering micro and small enterprises. *Economic Journal of Emerging Markets, 15*(1), 56–71.

Ekimova, K. V. (2013). *Finance of organizations (enterprises)*. INFRA-M.

Isakov, D. A. (2010). *Risk management for the development of municipal economic systems*. MAKS Press.

Ismayilov, Kh. N. (2019). The impact of structural changes in agriculture on risk reduction. *Economics and Entrepreneurship, (1)*, 456–459.

Gazizov, R. M. (2014). Foreign experience in the development of rural areas. *Young Scientist, 2*, 416–418.

Mirzazada, N. (2025). The state of organization of the management system and its characteristics. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities, 2*(4), 107–113.

Mirzazadeh, N., & Zeynalli, M. (2024). Improvement of information provision of small business in the agricultural sphere. *Journal of Economics, 1*(1), 23–27.

Mirzazada, N., & Camalov, T. (2025). Mechanism for regulating business relations. *Porta Universorum, 1*(8), 26–36.

Mirzazadeh, N. (2025). Scientific and theoretical foundations of the formation and development of management strategy in business entities. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities, 2*(5), 7–15.

Omoshev, T., Zhoroeva, A., Abyshov, I., Kaparova, G., & Mamyrkulova, D. (2024). Green technologies of the agroindustrial complex as the main element of increasing the competitive innovative development of Central Asia. *Scientific Horizons, 27*(12), 103–115.

Shchevyev, A. N., Bykov, A. A., & Zyablitseva, I. V. (2020). Principles, strategic trends and mechanisms of food security in development areas, the North and the Arctic of Siberia. *Economic Review, 1*(3), 15–20.

Uskova, T. V., Selimenkov, R. Yu., Anishchenko, A. N., & Chekavinsky, A. N. (2014). *Food security of the region* (Monograph). ISEDT RAS.

Vartanova, M. L. (2016). Main directions of ensuring food security in the Russian Federation. *Regional Problems of Economic Transformation, 5*(67), 29–39.

Vodyasov, P. V. (2016). Assessing the physical availability of food for the population of the region (using the example of the Altai Territory). *Economics and Entrepreneurship, 4-2*(69-2), 227–230.

Yermekova, Zh., Romanenko, S., Zhanibekova, G., Aitzhanova, B., & Apakhayev, N. (2024). Integration of digital technologies to improve the efficiency of small and medium-sized agricultural enterprises. *Scientific Horizons, 27*(12), 142–152.

Zubareva, Yu. V., & Pilipenko, L. M. (2016). Problems of running agribusiness and directions for their solution. *Fundamental Research, 12-4*, 858–862.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Assessment of Risk Management Systems in Enterprises

[1] Brilyant Abbasova, [2] Mehriban Hasanova, [3] Gulnara Guliyeva, [4] Anar Huseynova, [5] Narmin Mirzazadeh

Accepted: 11.09.2025
Published: 12.04.2025

https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110008

Abstract. Risk management represents a coordinated system of strategic and tactical measures aimed at achieving organizational goals by anticipating, assessing, and mitigating potential risks. In contemporary economic theory, risk is understood as a probable event that may lead to positive, neutral, or negative outcomes. When a risk carries both beneficial and harmful consequences, it is classified as a *speculative risk*. The overarching purpose of a risk management system within the economic sphere is to enhance the competitiveness of enterprises by preventing or reducing the realization of adverse events and optimizing responses when risks do occur.

In modern organizational environments, an effective risk management framework should be embedded into all operational and managerial processes, functioning as an integral component of day-to-day and strategic decision-making. However, in practice, risk management is still frequently delegated to an isolated department, which can disconnect it from core business operations and reduce its effectiveness. A comprehensive risk management system operates across various levels of management, allowing organizations to better anticipate threats and implement proactive measures.

[1] Abbasova, B. Senior Lecturer, Department of Agribusiness, Management and Marketing, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: brilyantabbas@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0004-5459-4198

[2] Hasanova, M. Senior Lecturer, Department of Agribusiness, Management and Marketing, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: mehriban_adau@mail.ru. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-1800-4049

[3] Guliyeva, G. Senior Lecturer, Department of Agribusiness, Management and Marketing, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: gulnara.quliyeva@adau.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-1284-9999

[4] Huseynova, A. Senior Lecturer, Department of Agribusiness, Management and Marketing, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: anar.huseynov@adau.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-3678-2083

[5] Mirzazadeh, N. Lecturer, Department of Agribusiness, Management and Marketing, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: narminmirzazada@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-5060-0125

Because of this, risk management cannot be viewed as an independent system; rather, it functions in a holistic, interconnected manner.

Particular attention should be given to risk evaluation during the most critical phases of economic development, including strategic planning revisions, the launch of new projects, the introduction of new technologies or procedures, and before undertaking major financial investments or optimization measures. Strengthening risk management during these stages ensures greater organizational resilience and long-term stability.

Keywords: *process, finance, cost, analysis, strategy*

Introduction

Despite the growing recognition of its importance, the implementation of comprehensive risk management systems within enterprises remains insufficiently developed (Ekimova, 2013). One major limitation of many risk management approaches found in the economic literature is that they often overlook the true sources of entrepreneurial risk, the resource capacities of different enterprises, and the specific characteristics of various economic sectors. As highlighted by Vodyasov (2016), diverse types of risks require differentiated management tools rather than a universal methodology.

Empirical observations indicate that both small and large enterprises achieve the most effective results only through the combined use of multiple risk management methods. These methods should be applied in flexible combinations, with continuous attention to maintaining an optimal balance between acceptable levels of risk and the expected benefits (Omoshev, Zhoroeva, Abyshov, Kaparova, & Mamyrkulova, 2024). Although experts may disagree on the exact classification and number of components within the risk management process, the following set of stages is broadly recognized as comprehensive and methodologically sound (Yermekova, Romanenko, Zhanibekova, Aitzhanova, & Apakhayev, 2024).

1. Risk Management Planning

This initial stage outlines the overall approach to identifying, evaluating, and addressing risks. The plan specifies essential procedures and the key organizational actions to be applied. Identification requires recognizing events or conditions that may negatively influence project outcomes, and documentation of these risks is essential. Typically, risk recognition is based on the experience gained from previous projects or earlier phases of the current project.

2. Risk Analysis and Prioritization

Once identified, each risk is examined to determine its potential impact on project cost, schedule, labor, or resources. The likelihood of occurrence is also assessed. Risks are then prioritized by combining their probability levels with the severity of their expected consequences. This structured evaluation helps decision-makers focus on the most critical risks first.

3. Response Planning

At this stage, specific measures are developed to reduce the likelihood of risk occurrence or minimize its consequences. Risk response activities are usually incorporated into broader operational or development processes rather than treated as separate tasks. Effective planning also includes allocating necessary resources—financial, human, and temporal—to support mitigation activities.

4. Risk Monitoring

Monitoring ensures that risk response strategies remain effective as conditions evolve. This stage involves ongoing reassessment of risks, adjustment of priorities, and timely identification of risks that have begun to materialize. As Mirzazada (2025) notes, this process is essentially a continuous feedback loop, repeating earlier steps of identification and analysis to maintain an accurate understanding of the risk environment.

Methodology

In the context of ongoing economic and financial instability, risk management has become one of the most critical functional areas for enterprises seeking long-term sustainability. The accelerating processes of globalization introduce additional layers of uncertainty and exposure to external shocks. For this reason, the systematic application of risk management principles is increasingly viewed as essential for ensuring that organizations—particularly those operating in complex sectors such as chemical production—can meet their strategic objectives while mitigating the likelihood and impact of adverse events. Implementing a comprehensive risk management system enables enterprises to (Vartanova, 2016):

- identify potential risks at every operational stage;
- forecast, compare, and evaluate emerging threats;
- develop an appropriate management strategy and a set of organizational decisions designed to minimize or eliminate risks;
- create the necessary conditions for the execution of preventive and corrective measures;
- continuously monitor the performance of the risk management system;
- analyze results and introduce improvements as needed.

These functions highlight the multidimensional nature of risk management and its importance in maintaining organizational resilience.

The defining characteristics of a modern risk management framework include (Uskova, Selimenkov, Anishchenko, & Chekavinsky, 2014):

- the need for advanced forecasting, intuitive judgment, and strategic foresight in managerial decision-making;
- the potential to formalize and institutionalize risk management as a structured system;

- the ability to rapidly identify opportunities for performance improvement and reduce the probability of undesirable outcomes.

In many developed economies—particularly in the United States—large corporations have adopted Enterprise Risk Management (ERM) systems, reflecting a broad consensus that traditional management approaches are insufficient for addressing contemporary challenges (Zubareva & Pilipenko, 2016). ERM models emphasize an integrated, organization-wide perspective, enabling companies to coordinate risk responses across multiple departments and strategic levels.

Successful implementation of risk management requires clear delineation of responsibilities across all structural divisions. Senior management must designate qualified personnel responsible for developing and overseeing risk management procedures at every organizational level (Isakov, 2010). These responsibilities must align with the company's long-term strategic goals and remain consistent with national legislation. In addition, it is essential to distribute tasks related to risk identification, evaluation, and control effectively among specialists so that emerging risks are addressed promptly and efficiently (Ariabod, Moghaddasi, Zeraatkish, & Mohammadi Nejad, 2019).

Risk management is considered one of the primary tools for reducing the cost of the product life cycle, optimizing production efficiency, and improving enterprise governance. When applied systematically, it serves as a preventive mechanism that reduces or eliminates potential disruptions that might threaten organizational success (Amrahov, 2015).

Achieving enterprise objectives requires a clear understanding of the company's core activities, technological processes, and the spectrum of possible risks. Preventing risks and reducing potential losses contribute directly to the sustainable development of the enterprise (Gazizov, 2014). In essence, risk management comprises the processes of directing and coordinating corporate activities to ensure their effectiveness. This includes identifying the types of losses that may occur, assessing their impact, and selecting the most appropriate method for managing each individual risk (Shchevyev, Bykov, & Zyablitseva, 2020).

From another perspective, risk management can be understood as a structured, iterative process through which risks are continuously monitored, analyzed, and reassessed to reduce or neutralize their consequences while ensuring the achievement of organizational goals. Thus, risk management is both a periodic and ongoing activity aimed at safeguarding enterprise viability. It encompasses identification, monitoring, control, and mitigation of all forms of risk, as well as communication and consultation practices that support long-term societal and organizational needs without compromising the needs of future generations (Ismayilov, 2019). Effective risk assessment and mitigation strengthen enterprise stability and accelerate sustainable development.

According to Amrahov, Rahimli, Mirzazadeh, Ibrahimli, and Valizadeh (2023), the procedural components of risk management planning and implementation include:

- defining the overall risk management framework;
- identifying risks and assessing their influence on business processes;

- conducting qualitative and quantitative analyses of identified risks;
- developing appropriate response strategies and implementing them in practice;
- monitoring risks and evaluating the performance of risk management activities;
- analyzing the relationship between risk management and overall enterprise performance;
- conducting a final evaluation of the integrated risk management system.

Results

For effective implementation of risk management activities, enterprises must establish a structured methodology or program that supports continuous and systematic risk monitoring. A Modern Networked Risk Management (MNRM) framework represents such a theoretically grounded program, designed to integrate best-practice processes, analytical methods, and management tools into a unified enterprise-wide system. This framework fosters active decision-making, ongoing identification and evaluation of risks, assessment of their materiality, and measurement of their potential influence on managerial decisions. It also enables the deployment of strategic countermeasures while considering essential project parameters, including scope, budget allocations, and implementation timelines (Dewanta & Sidiq, 2023).

The enterprise performance management process functions as a complementary instrument, supplying critical data for the operation of the risk management mechanism. Negative performance indicators and emerging unfavourable trends must be carefully analyzed to determine their potential effects on risk exposure. Based on this assessment, appropriate control measures should be activated within the enterprise's key operational areas. Such corrective interventions may include resource redistribution—financial adjustments, reassignment of personnel, revised production scheduling—or activating pre-planned strategies for mitigating specific risks. When applied effectively, this control mechanism allows the enterprise to account for severe deviations, prolonged negative shifts, and fluctuations in key performance indicators (Amrahov, 2014).

A crucial component of this system is the requirement to regularly reassess identified risks, especially those exerting a consistent influence on enterprise operations. As the organizational system advances through its developmental phases, additional and more detailed information becomes available, enabling more accurate risk evaluations. If the magnitude or probability of a particular risk changes substantially, corresponding management strategies must be recalibrated. This iterative, progressive approach strengthens the overall management cycle and ensures that risk dimensions remain under appropriate and effective control.

The enterprise's risk management policy must therefore focus on establishing a mechanism that guarantees efficient and uninterrupted risk oversight. The mechanism should encourage early, accurate, and continuous detection and assessment of risks. Furthermore, it must promote transparency through comprehensive reporting, support the planning and implementation of risk-

reduction actions, and anticipate shifts in internal and external operational conditions. These elements collectively reinforce the stability, effectiveness, and adaptability of the risk management program (Mirzazadeh & Zeynalli, 2024).

Additionally, the mechanism must encompass the identification and monitoring of risks associated with counterparties, contractors, and other external stakeholders. Its successful operation requires a clearly developed plan composed of directive documents tailored to the enterprise's functional areas. These documents specify the procedures, responsibilities, and timeframes required for implementing the Integrated System of Risk Management (ISRM). Rather than hindering other organizational activities, such a structured plan enhances managerial oversight and strengthens decision-making capacity, thereby positioning enterprise leadership at the forefront of proactive risk governance (Amrahov, Mirzazadeh, Guliyeva, & Gazanfarova, 2024).

Discussion

The effectiveness of any risk management system depends on its ability to remain flexible, forward-looking, and integrated into strategic decision-making processes. A proactive approach enables enterprises to continuously assess factors that might lead to potential disruptions, identify opportunities, and evaluate the likelihood and severity of possible impacts (Shchevyev, Bykov, & Zyablitseva, 2020). This ensures that risks are detected early, correctly classified, and mitigated before they escalate into costly problems. The process also requires generating timely and reliable information, maintaining transparent communication among stakeholders, and adjusting risk priorities as conditions evolve. Such adaptability is crucial because risks differ in origin, intensity, and timing, requiring tailored responses rather than a single, uniform method.

In practical application, risk management must account for both technical and non-technical threats. Enterprises benefit most when risk identification and response measures are embedded into daily operations, allowing teams to anticipate and neutralize problems before they significantly influence productivity or financial performance. As emphasized by Mirzazada and Camalov (2025), well-designed strategies help organizations intervene early, reduce the possibility of losses, and maintain operational stability. The overarching goal is to create a risk-aware environment where each unit—management, departments, and employees—participates actively in managing uncertainties and safeguarding enterprise sustainability.

Conclusion

The risk management process comprises several interrelated components—identification, analysis, planning and response, monitoring, and control—that collectively support effective enterprise decision-making (Amrakhov, 2022). Identification requires systematic review of data, brainstorming sessions, independent assessments, and continuous updates to the risk register. Once identified, risks must be analyzed using qualitative and quantitative tools, including probability assessments, fault-tree analysis, historical data review, and expert judgment. This analytical stage helps classify risks according

to categories such as cost, schedule, technical, or procedural factors and determines their potential severity. Planning and response measures then establish priorities, assign responsibilities, select appropriate strategies, and develop actionable plans that can be implemented promptly when risks materialize. Monitoring ensures that emerging risks are tracked, reporting remains consistent, and adjustments are made based on real-time triggers.

For these processes to function effectively, enterprises often require a dedicated risk management unit responsible for coordinating activities across departments (Mirzazadeh, 2025). Directors, managers, and employees each play distinct roles: leadership oversees risk policies and approves financing for mitigation measures, managers support implementation and organizational coordination, while employees maintain the risk register, communicate developments, and promote an active decision-making culture. As noted by Amrahov et al. (2023), effective risk management depends on collaboration, clear communication, and ongoing knowledge development among all stakeholders. Although risk identification is inherently complex, a well-structured system enhances organizational resilience, reduces uncertainty, and supports sustainable long-term development.

References

Amrahov, V. T. (2015). The institutional aspects of the formation of agricultural market. *Theoretical & Applied Science, 10*(30), 72–74.

Amrahov, V. T. (2014). Improvement of the economic mechanism of the structural policy of the state in the agricultural market. *Theoretical & Applied Science, 11*(10, Special Issue), 471–476.

Amrakhov, V. T. (2022). Risk assessment in agrarian entrepreneurship. *Mitteilungen Klosterneuburg, 6*(72), 99–107.

Ariabod, A., Moghaddasi, R., Zeraatkish, Y., & Mohammadi Nejad, A. (2019). Governance and agricultural growth: Evidence from selected developing countries. *Economic Journal of Emerging Markets, 11*(1), 73–80.

Amrahov, V., Narimanov, N., Hajiyeva, S., Mirzazadeh, N., Ismayilova, T., & Osmanova, G. (2025). Development of effective financial strategies for long-term economic viability. *International Journal of Accounting and Economics Studies, 12*(SI-2), 1–9.

Amrahov, V., Rahimli, F., Mirzazadeh, N., Ibrahimli, G., & Valizadeh, H. (2023). Satisfying the consumer demand for agricultural products: Possibilities and its prediction. *Scientific Horizons, 26*(7), 160–170.

Amrahov, V. T., Mirzazadeh, N. G., Guliyeva, K. N., & Gazanfarova, J. V. (2024). Economic effectiveness and forecasting of scientific activity in Azerbaijan. *International Journal of Religion, 5*(7), 422–430.

Amrahov, V. T., Mirzazadeh, N. G., Taghiyev, M. Z., Muradov, R. J., Hamidov, A. V., & Karimova, M. H. (2023). Modeling and forecasting of production in agriculture. *Journal of Law and Sustainable Development, 11*(7).

Dewanta, A. S., & Sidiq, S. (2023). Intensity of the creative economy agency and partnership in empowering micro and small enterprises. *Economic Journal of Emerging Markets, 15*(1), 56–71.

Ekimova, K. V. (2013). *Finance of organizations (enterprises)*. INFRA-M.

Isakov, D. A. (2010). *Risk management for the development of municipal economic systems*. MAKS Press.

Ismayilov, Kh. N. (2019). The impact of structural changes in agriculture on risk reduction. *Economics and Entrepreneurship, (1)*, 456–459.

Gazizov, R. M. (2014). Foreign experience in the development of rural areas. *Young Scientist, 2*, 416–418.

Mirzazada, N. (2025). The state of organization of the management system and its characteristics. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities, 2*(4), 107–113.

Mirzazadeh, N., & Zeynalli, M. (2024). Improvement of information provision of small business in the agricultural sphere. *Journal of Economics, 1*(1), 23–27.

Mirzazada, N., & Camalov, T. (2025). Mechanism for regulating business relations. *Porta Universorum, 1*(8), 26–36.

Mirzazadeh, N. (2025). Scientific and theoretical foundations of the formation and development of management strategy in business entities. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities, 2*(5), 7–15.

Omoshev, T., Zhoroeva, A., Abyshov, I., Kaparova, G., & Mamyrkulova, D. (2024). Green technologies of the agroindustrial complex as the main element of increasing the competitive innovative development of Central Asia. *Scientific Horizons, 27*(12), 103–115.

Shchevyev, A. N., Bykov, A. A., & Zyablitseva, I. V. (2020). Principles, strategic trends and mechanisms of food security in development areas, the North and the Arctic of Siberia. *Economic Review, 1*(3), 15–20.

Uskova, T. V., Selimenkov, R. Yu., Anishchenko, A. N., & Chekavinsky, A. N. (2014). *Food security of the region* (Monograph). ISEDT RAS.

Vartanova, M. L. (2016). Main directions of ensuring food security in the Russian Federation. *Regional Problems of Economic Transformation, 5*(67), 29–39.

Vodyasov, P. V. (2016). Assessing the physical availability of food for the population of the region (using the example of the Altai Territory). *Economics and Entrepreneurship, 4–2*(69–2), 227–230.

Yermekova, Zh., Romanenko, S., Zhanibekova, G., Aitzhanova, B., & Apakhayev, N. (2024). Integration of digital technologies to improve the efficiency of small and medium-sized agricultural enterprises. *Scientific Horizons, 27*(12), 142–152.

Zubareva, Yu. V., & Pilipenko, L. M. (2016). Problems of running agribusiness and directions for their solution. *Fundamental Research, 12–4*, 858–862.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Bioecological Traits and Ecological–Agronomic Hazards of the Invasive Species Xanthium strumarium L. in Arid Regions of Azerbaijan

[1] Sabina Seyidova

Accepted: 12.01.2025
Published: 12.06.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110009

Abstract. *Xanthium strumarium* L. is a globally distributed invasive weed whose rapid ecological expansion poses growing risks to agricultural productivity and biodiversity. This study investigates the bioecological traits and harmful impacts of *X. strumarium* within the Kangarli District of the Nakhchivan Autonomous Republic, where the species has become increasingly dominant. Field research conducted between September and November 2025 employed systematic morphological assessment, phenological observations, and habitat-based evaluations to determine the plant's ecological behavior and dispersal mechanisms. Findings reveal pronounced ecological plasticity, including tolerance to drought, frost, and saline soils, alongside aggressive competitive interactions that suppress crop yields, alter native plant communities, and generate livestock and human health concerns due to its barbed fruits. The study highlights *X. strumarium* as a significant ecological and economic threat, underscoring the urgent need for continuous monitoring, targeted management interventions, and long-term invasion-risk modeling.

Keywords: *Xanthium strumarium* L.; invasive species; bioecological traits; ecological impact; agricultural risk

1. Introduction

Invasive plant species represent one of the most pressing ecological challenges of the 21st century, threatening biodiversity, agricultural productivity, and ecosystem stability across the globe. Defined as non-native species that spread rapidly and cause ecological or economic harm, invasive weeds exert competitive pressure on native flora, disrupt trophic interactions, and reshape habitat structure. Their expansion is intensified by climate change, habitat disturbance, and global trade networks, which collectively accelerate biological invasions across continents (Ullah et al., 2022; Waheed et al., 2024).

Within this context, *Xanthium strumarium* L.—a member of the extensive Asteraceae family—has emerged as a particularly successful invasive taxon. The species is characterized by high ecological plasticity, rapid growth, and an efficient dispersal system, enabling its establishment in agricultural fields, disturbed lands, riverbanks, and roadside habitats worldwide (Fan et al., 2019). Reports from Eurasia, South Asia, North America, and subtropical regions consistently highlight its aggressive competitive behavior, its ability to suppress native vegetation, and its capacity to reduce crop yields through resource competition and allelopathic effects (Chavan & Kulkarni, 2021; Abdiyeva &

[1] Seyidova, S. Master's Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: seyidovasebine22@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-1685-7068

Litvinskaya, 2020). As a result, *X. strumarium* is increasingly recognized as a model species for studying plant invasiveness and bioecological adaptability.

The morphological variability of *X. strumarium*, including its barbed, buoyant fruits and seasonally adaptive growth patterns, further enhances its dispersal potential. Fruits readily attach to animals and human clothing, while their ability to float facilitates hydrochoric transport across irrigation canals, rivers, and flood-prone areas (Abdiyeva & Litvinskaya, 2020). These characteristics align with broader ecological theory, which suggests that species with strong reproductive capacity, generalist habitat preferences, and anthropogenic dispersal pathways are more likely to become successful invaders.

Figure 1. *Xanthium strumarium* L. in the study area: (a) habit of the plant near Qıvraq; (b) close-up of mature barbed burs with hooked spines.

Although *X. strumarium* is well documented globally, its regional behavior varies significantly with local climate, soil composition, and land-use patterns. For the Nakhchivan Autonomous Republic—an ecologically sensitive territory with sharply continental climatic conditions—the species presents a growing management concern. Preliminary field observations indicate rapid expansion in agricultural zones, particularly in the Kangarli District's Kıvraq settlement, where land disturbance, irrigation systems, and livestock movement may facilitate its spread. Despite these observations, the bioecological characteristics and harmful impacts of this species remain insufficiently studied in the region, leaving a critical knowledge gap in both ecological science and agricultural management.

Accordingly, this study investigates the bioecological traits, dispersal mechanisms, and harmful effects of *Xanthium strumarium* L. in the Kangarli District of Nakhchivan. The research addresses the following questions:

1. **What morphological and ecological characteristics define the adaptability and invasiveness of *X. strumarium* in this region?**
2. **How does the species affect agricultural productivity, livestock, human health, and native plant communities?**
3. **What environmental factors and dispersal pathways contribute most to its proliferation?**

By examining these dimensions, the study contributes to a deeper understanding of invasive species ecology in arid and semi-arid environments and offers evidence-based recommendations for monitoring and managing *X. strumarium* populations in Nakhchivan.

2. Literature Review

Globally, *Xanthium strumarium* L. has been characterized as a morphologically variable and ecologically resilient invasive weed, capable of thriving across a wide spectrum of climatic and edaphic conditions (Fan et al., 2019; Chavan & Kulkarni, 2021). Detailed taxonomic and morphological investigations show considerable variation in plant height, stem pigmentation, leaf morphology, and burr size, reflecting a high degree of ecological resilience and phenotypic plasticity (Chavan & Kulkarni, 2021; Fan et al., 2019). Such plasticity enables the species to adjust its growth strategy under varying levels of disturbance, soil fertility, and moisture, reinforcing its status as a successful colonizer in both natural and anthropogenically transformed habitats.

The dispersal biology of *X. strumarium* further enhances its invasive success. Studies from Azerbaijan and Central Asia emphasize that the species relies on diaspore dispersal through zoochory, hydrochory, and anthropochory, with barbed burs easily attaching to animal fur, human clothing, and agricultural machinery, while also remaining buoyant in irrigation channels and river systems (Abdiyeva & Litvinskaya, 2020; Waheed et al., 2024). This multi-modal dispersal system, coupled with robust seed viability, creates a powerful propagule pressure that sustains persistent seed banks and facilitates rapid colonization of new areas (Ullah et al., 2022). In parallel, its tolerance to drought, salinity, and temperature extremes further illustrates the species' ecological plasticity and capacity to exploit disturbed landscapes.

From an ecosystem perspective, *X. strumarium* is increasingly associated with competitive exclusion mechanisms and trait-mediated ecosystem disruption. Field and modeling studies report that dense stands of this species reduce native plant richness, alter community structure, and interfere with successional trajectories by monopolizing light, nutrients, and space (Ullah et al., 2022; Waheed et al., 2024). In agricultural systems, *X. strumarium* competes directly with crops, lowers yields, degrades pasture quality, and can impair livestock health through its spiny burs and toxic constituents (Fan et al., 2019; Sharifi-Rad et al., 2015). These findings collectively position *X. strumarium* as not only a weed of agronomic concern but also a driver of broader ecological change, with significant implications for biodiversity conservation, land management, and rural economies.

Despite this growing international evidence, regional patterns of invasiveness remain strongly context-dependent. Recent studies highlight that the magnitude of ecological and economic impact is shaped by local climate regimes, disturbance intensity, and management practices (Abdiyeva & Litvinskaya, 2020; Waheed et al., 2024). In this respect, arid and semi-arid regions such as Nakhchivan offer a critical but underexplored setting for understanding how the species' global invasion syndromes manifest under sharply continental climatic conditions. Situating the current study within this literature allows the bioecological traits and harmful effects of *X. strumarium* in the Kəngərli–Qıvraq landscape to be interpreted not as isolated observations, but as part of a broader, globally documented invasion dynamic.

3. Materials and Methods

Study Area

The study was conducted in the vicinity of Qıvraq settlement, Kangarli District, Nakhchivan Autonomous Republic, Azerbaijan. The area is located on an arid steppe plain with a continental, semi-arid climate, characterized by hot, dry summers and cold winters, with low annual precipitation and high evaporation. Agricultural landscapes in the region are dominated by irrigated crop fields, interspersed with roadside verges, fallow lands and disturbed anthropogenic habitats, which together provide a heterogeneous mosaic of potential invasion sites for *Xanthium strumarium* L.

Sampling Period and Field Design

Fieldwork was carried out between September and November 2025, corresponding to the main fruiting and seed dispersal period of *X. strumarium*. Surveys were conducted in both cultivated fields and roadside/disturbed habitats in and around Qıvraq. A purposive, habitat-based sampling design was adopted to capture the species' bioecological variability across contrasting land-use types.

Within each habitat type, stands of *X. strumarium* were selected based on visual dominance and accessibility. At each stand, plants were examined in situ to document:

- presence and density of *X. strumarium*;
- associated crop and spontaneous vegetation;
- visible competitive effects (shading, space occupation, crop suppression);
- evidence of interaction with livestock and humans (adhering burs, injuries, irritation reports).

Field surveys were repeated at regular intervals over the study period to track phenological changes from fruit development to seed release and dispersal.

Morphological and Ecological Characterization

Morphological traits (overall plant height, stem branching pattern, leaf shape, and capitulum and bur characteristics) were recorded following standard taxonomic descriptions for *X. strumarium* (Fan et al., 2019; Chavan & Kulkarni, 2021). Particular attention was paid to:

- variability in plant stature and branching under different habitat conditions;
- bur morphology (size range, spine arrangement, presence of hooked spines at the apex);
- visible phenotypic plasticity related to soil and moisture conditions.

Ecological observations focused on habitat preference and tolerance. For each stand, the following qualitative parameters were recorded:

- habitat type (crop field, irrigation canal edge, roadside, wasteland);
- apparent soil condition (texture, moisture, visible salinity/alkalinity signs);
- exposure to drought and frost during the study period;
- degree of disturbance (grazing pressure, traffic, tillage).

These observations were used to qualitatively assess ecological plasticity, including tolerance to drought, frost, and soil salinity, and to infer the species' invasive potential in regional agroecosystems.

Herbarium Preparation

Representative specimens of *X. strumarium* were collected during the fruiting stage, carefully cleaned from soil and debris, and pressed and dried under shade at room temperature according to standard herbarium protocols (Sharifi-Rad et al., 2015). Mature burs were collected separately, air-dried, and stored in labeled paper envelopes for later examination of dispersal structures. Prepared specimens were deposited as herbarium vouchers to document the occurrence of the species in the study area and to support subsequent taxonomic verification.

Assessment of Dispersal Pathways and Impacts

To characterize dispersal mechanisms, field observations focused on the attachment of burs to livestock, wildlife, clothing and agricultural equipment, as well as their accumulation along irrigation channels and drainage lines, indicating hydrochorous transport. These qualitative observations were used to infer the relative importance of zoochory, hydrochory and anthropochory as diaspore dispersal pathways (Abdiyeva & Litvinskaya, 2020; Ullah et al., 2022; Waheed et al., 2024).

The impact of *X. strumarium* on local systems was assessed qualitatively by:

- comparing crop stands with and without heavy infestation to evaluate visible yield suppression and competition;
- recording instances where burs adhered to the coats of cattle and small ruminants, indicating potential animal welfare and wool contamination issues;
- noting anecdotal reports of skin irritation or allergic reactions in local residents handling the plants or coming into contact with burs.

Overall, the study adopted a qualitative ecological assessment approach, combining repeated field observations, morphological characterization, and context-based impact evaluation to build a comprehensive profile of the bioecological traits and harmful effects of *Xanthium strumarium* L. in the Kangarli District.

4. Results

4.1. Habitat Distribution

Field observations revealed that *Xanthium strumarium* L. is widely and consistently distributed across the Qıvraq settlement landscape, occurring both in cultivated fields and along roadside and disturbed habitats. The species demonstrated substantial ecological amplitude, successfully colonizing irrigated cropland, irrigation canal margins, compacted roadside verges, and waste ground.

In agricultural fields, *X. strumarium* frequently formed dense, monospecific patches, particularly along field edges and in poorly managed or under-weeded zones. Along roadsides and canal banks, it

appeared as a dominant or co-dominant species within the ruderal flora, indicating a strong capacity to exploit disturbed and anthropogenically modified environments.

4.2. Morphological Variation and Phenotypic Plasticity

Across the surveyed habitats, *X. strumarium* exhibited marked morphological variation, indicative of pronounced phenotypic plasticity. Plant height, branching intensity, leaf size, and capitulum density varied visibly between sites. Individuals growing in fertile, irrigated fields tended to be more robust, with taller stems and more intensively branched canopies, whereas plants on dry, compacted roadside soils were generally shorter and more sparsely branched.

The morphology of the burs remained consistent with species descriptions (two-chambered, spiny, with hooked apical spines), but minor variation in size and spine prominence was observed among plants exposed to differing moisture and soil conditions. This spectrum of morphological responses underscores the species' capacity to maintain reproductive structures across a range of environmental contexts.

4.3. Stress Tolerance and Ecological Amplitude

Across the observation period, *X. strumarium* exhibited robust tolerance to abiotic stressors. The species remained physiologically active under:

- periods of reduced precipitation, indicating tolerance to episodic drought;
- early-season frosts, without visible large-scale damage to stems or reproductive organs;
- visibly saline or degraded soils, where associated vegetation was sparse or stressed.

This combination of drought tolerance, frost resistance, and apparent tolerance to soil salinity confirms *X. strumarium* as an ecologically resilient taxon with high invasion potential in semi-arid agroecosystems. The capacity to persist and reproduce under suboptimal conditions positions the species as a likely long-term component of disturbed landscapes if control measures are not implemented.

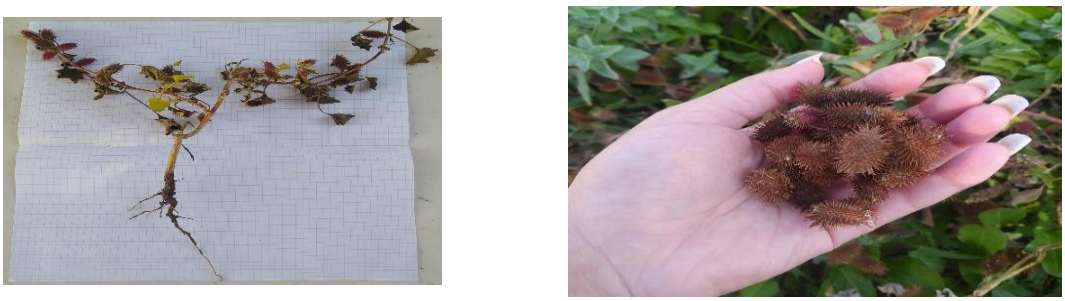

Figure 2. Sampled material of *Xanthium strumarium* L. in the study area: (a) whole plant prepared as a herbarium voucher; (b) collected mature burs in hand, illustrating the barbed diaspores responsible for zoochorous and anthropochorous dispersal

4.4. Agricultural Impacts and Competitive Performance

Within cultivated fields, *X. strumarium* displayed a significant suppressive effect on crop vigour. Visual comparison between heavily infested and relatively weed-free plots indicated:

- increased competition for light, water, and nutrients, as evidenced by shading and canopy overlap;
- stunted growth and reduced apparent vigour of adjacent crops in areas with dense *X. strumarium* stands;
- increased difficulty in field operations (e.g., harvesting, mechanical weeding) due to the structural density of the weed.

These field patterns provide clear indicators of competitive displacement, where *X. strumarium* progressively occupies space and resources at the expense of cultivated plants. Although this study employed a qualitative approach, the observed reduction in crop performance in infested patches suggests tangible risks to yield quantity and quality.

4.5. Impacts on Livestock and Humans

The tough, spiny burs of *X. strumarium* demonstrated a high propensity to adhere to animal coats, wool, and human clothing, confirming effective zoochorous and anthropochorous dispersal. In livestock, burs were frequently recorded attached to the wool and skin of grazing animals, creating potential for:

- mechanical irritation and discomfort, particularly around sensitive body regions;
- wool contamination, reducing its quality and complicating processing.

From a human health perspective, local observations and reports indicated that contact with burs and plant material may cause skin irritation and possible allergic reactions in sensitive individuals. Together, these findings confirm that the species imposes not only ecological and agronomic costs but also animal welfare and occupational health concerns for farmers and rural residents.

4.6. Ecological Displacement of Native Flora

In natural and semi-natural vegetation patches, *X. strumarium* was consistently associated with a decline in the density and diversity of native plant species. Stands with high *X. strumarium* cover were characterized by:

- reduced presence of low-growing native forbs and grasses;
- simplified plant community structure with dominance of a few disturbance-tolerant taxa;
- visible alteration of the floristic balance and community composition.

These patterns align with competitive exclusion mechanisms, where the vigorous growth and dense canopy of *X. strumarium* restrict light availability and occupy physical space, gradually excluding less

competitive native species. The resulting trait-mediated ecosystem disruption—driven by robust growth, persistent burs, and high seed output—indicates that the species acts as a strong ecological filter, restructuring local plant communities in invaded sites.

4.7. Synthesis of Ecological and Socio-Economic Impacts

Taken together, the results demonstrate that *Xanthium strumarium* L. in the Qıvraq area:

- possesses broad ecological amplitude, occurring across multiple habitat types;
- exhibits pronounced phenotypic plasticity and resilience to key abiotic stressors;
- exerts notable competitive pressure on crops, leading to visible reductions in crop vigour;
- creates direct negative interactions with livestock and humans via spiny burs and potential allergic effects;
- drives ecological displacement of native flora and disrupts floristic balance in invaded communities.

These converging lines of evidence position *X. strumarium* as a high-impact invasive weed, with intertwined ecological, agricultural, and socio-economic consequences for the Kangarli District. The findings underscore the urgent need for systematic monitoring, early detection, and integrated management strategies to prevent further spread and mitigate long-term ecological and economic damage.

5. Discussion

The present findings demonstrate that *Xanthium strumarium* L. in the Qıvraq settlement of Kangarli District exhibits a combination of high ecological amplitude, strong phenotypic plasticity, and pronounced competitive ability, all of which are emblematic of its global invasive profile. These results corroborate international patterns of *X. strumarium* invasiveness, where the species has repeatedly been reported as a dominant component of ruderal and agro-ecosystems across Eurasia and beyond (Fan et al., 2019; Chavan & Kulkarni, 2021; Ullah et al., 2022; Waheed et al., 2024). The ability of the species to thrive under variable soil conditions, tolerate drought, frost, and salinity, and maintain reproductive output aligns with earlier reports of its ecological resilience and phenotypic plasticity (Fan et al., 2019; Abdiyeva & Litvinskaya, 2020).

From an ecological perspective, the dominance of *X. strumarium* in field margins, canal banks, and disturbed sites indicates that it possesses adaptive superiority in disturbed agroecosystems. The dense stands observed in cropland and along irrigation channels suggest that the species operates through a combination of resource monopolization and competitive exclusion mechanisms. By rapidly occupying space and intercepting light, while simultaneously exploiting soil moisture and nutrients, *X. strumarium* effectively suppresses the growth of neighbouring crops and native herbs. The resulting trait-mediated ecosystem disruption, characterized by reduced species richness and simplified community structure, mirrors findings from other regions where *X. strumarium* has displaced native flora and altered plant community composition (Ullah et al., 2022; Waheed et al., 2024).

Dispersal ecology further reinforces its invasive capacity. The spiny burs enable diaspore dispersal through zoochory, hydrochory, and anthropochory, attaching to livestock, wildlife, and human clothing, and being transported along irrigation channels and drainage systems (Abdiyeva & Litvinskaya, 2020). This multifaceted dispersal strategy creates a feedback loop between anthropogenic disturbance and invasion intensity: the more the landscape is disturbed, grazed, irrigated, and traversed, the more efficiently *X. strumarium* propagules are redistributed. In agricultural settings, continuous soil disturbance, canal maintenance, and livestock movement inadvertently support the long-term persistence and spread of the species.

The socio-economic implications of these ecological dynamics are substantial. In croplands, *X. strumarium* imposes a significant suppressive effect on crop vigour, complicates field operations, and has the potential to reduce yields and economic returns for farmers. In livestock systems, burs that attach to wool and skin not only cause mechanical irritation but also degrade wool quality and increase labour demands for cleaning. For rural communities, the plant also poses public health and occupational risks, as contact with burs and plant tissues may trigger dermatitis or allergic reactions in susceptible individuals (Abdiyeva & Litvinskaya, 2020). These converging ecological and socio-economic impacts show that *X. strumarium* is not a minor weed but a high-impact invasive species with multi-dimensional consequences for local livelihoods.

In the broader context of environmental change, climate change is likely to amplify the invasion risk. Studies in other subtropical and semi-arid regions have shown that *X. strumarium* can expand its potential distribution under future climate scenarios, exploiting warmer temperatures and altered precipitation regimes (Ullah et al., 2022; Waheed et al., 2024). The demonstrated tolerance of the species in Qıvraq to drought, frost, and moderately saline conditions suggests that it is well positioned to capitalize on projected climatic variability in Nakhchivan. Without proactive management, climate-driven shifts may further strengthen its foothold, enabling colonization of new habitats and intensification of its impact on cropland and natural vegetation.

Despite growing international attention, regional research on *X. strumarium* in Azerbaijan and, specifically, in the Nakhchivan Autonomous Republic remains sparse. Existing studies have largely focused on general distribution, phytochemistry, or pharmacology (e.g., Fan et al., 2019; Sharifi-Rad et al., 2015), whereas detailed, site-specific evaluations of bioecological behaviour and local impact are limited. The present study thus fills a critical knowledge gap by providing a case-based ecological assessment of the species in a semi-arid, agriculturally important landscape. However, it also highlights the need for long-term, quantitative research on population dynamics, seedbank behaviour, competitive interactions with key crops, and cost–benefit analyses of various control strategies.

In summary, the results indicate that *Xanthium strumarium* L. in Qıvraq operates as a robust ecological invader, integrating high stress tolerance, efficient dispersal, and competitive dominance. These findings align with global evidence and underscore the urgency of moving beyond descriptive recognition of the problem toward integrated, evidence-based management and policy responses that can mitigate both ecological degradation and socio-economic losses.

6. Conclusion

This study demonstrates that *Xanthium strumarium* L. has become a widely established and ecologically resilient invasive weed in the Qıvraq area of Kangarli District, colonizing both cultivated fields and anthropogenically disturbed habitats. The species exhibits broad ecological amplitude, pronounced phenotypic plasticity, and effective dispersal through animals, water, and human activity. These traits collectively translate into significant ecological, agricultural, and health risks: suppression of crop vigour and potential yield reductions, contamination and irritation in livestock, possible allergic reactions in humans, and measurable displacement of native flora and disruption of local plant community structure.

Given this impact profile, *X. strumarium* should be recognized as a priority invasive species for regional and national biosecurity planning. Management responses cannot rely on isolated or short-term interventions; instead, they must be embedded within Integrated Weed Management (IWM) approaches, combining mechanical removal, targeted herbicide use where appropriate, crop rotation, competitive cropping, and strict hygiene measures to limit seed dispersal. At the policy level, there is a clear need for targeted eradication and containment strategies in high-value agricultural and conservation areas, supported by farmer training, public awareness campaigns, and cross-sectoral coordination.

Equally important is the establishment of long-term ecological monitoring programs to track population dynamics, invasion fronts, and the effectiveness of control measures under changing climatic conditions. Because dispersal pathways and climatic drivers transcend administrative borders, *X. strumarium* management should be included in broader transboundary invasive species surveillance frameworks. Ultimately, proactive and scientifically informed management of *X. strumarium* will be essential not only for safeguarding local agroecosystems and biodiversity in Nakhchivan but also for contributing to Azerbaijan's wider objectives in ecosystem resilience, food security, and sustainable rural development.

References

Abdiyeva, R. T., & Litvinskaya, S. A. (2020). Phytocenotic, bioecological and invasive activity of the invasive species *Xanthium strumarium* L. in some districts of Azerbaijan. *Plant & Fungal Research, 3*(2), 38–45.

Chavan, S. T., & Kulkarni, A. U. (2021). Morphological and phytochemical studies on *Xanthium strumarium* L. *Plantae Scientia, 4*(6), 287–290.

Fan, W., Fan, L., Peng, C., Zhang, Q., Wang, L., Li, L., ... & Wu, C. (2019). Traditional uses, botany, phytochemistry, pharmacology, pharmacokinetics and toxicology of *Xanthium strumarium* L.: A review. *Molecules, 24*(2), 359.

Sharifi-Rad, J., Hoseini-Alfatemi, S. M., Sharifi-Rad, M., Sharifi-Rad, M., Iriti, M., Sharifi-Rad, M., ... & Raeisi, S. (2015). Phytochemical compositions and biological activities of essential oil from *Xanthium strumarium* L. *Molecules, 20*(4), 7034–7047.

Ullah, R., Khan, N., Hewitt, N., Ali, K., Jones, D. A., & Khan, M. E. H. (2022). Invasive species as rivals: Invasive potential and distribution pattern of *Xanthium strumarium* L. *Sustainability, 14*(12), 7141.

Waheed, M., Haq, S. M., Arshad, F., Vitasović-Kosić, I., Bussmann, R. W., Hashem, A., & Abd-Allah, E. F. (2024). *Xanthium strumarium* L., an invasive species in the subtropics: Prediction of potential distribution areas and climate adaptability in Pakistan. *BMC Ecology and Evolution, 24*(1), 124.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Procedural Principles for Organizing General and Special Clerical Work

[1] Tofig Huseynov

Accepted: 12.01.2025
Published: 12.09.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110010

Abstract The effective organization of clerical work in government agencies and organizations creates favorable conditions for an efficient administrative system. In public administration, all incoming citizen appeals, petitions, complaints, proposals, and official letters should be handled with care. Their proper formalization must be carried out, and the content of each document should be thoroughly studied and analyzed. Based on these analyses, timely and objective responses should be provided to citizens' inquiries. Clerical work (records management) is one of the most important functional areas in administration. The high-level performance of any institution or enterprise largely depends on how well its clerical system is organized. This article defines the concepts of **general** and **special** clerical work, outlines the legal and procedural foundations for their implementation, and describes key principles and steps for effective organization of the clerical work system. Emphasis is placed on the unified handling of documentation, the division of clerical tasks, and the adoption of modern electronic record-keeping to improve efficiency and responsiveness in administrative operations.

Keywords: *Clerical Work; Records Management; Deductive Method; Document Requisites; Parallelism; Specialization; Efficiency*

Introduction

Efficient records management and clerical work constitute the foundation of transparency and effective governance. Proper handling of official records is essential for maintaining accountability and operational clarity within public institutions (GovOS Team, 2021). A well-organized clerical system ensures that information remains timely, accurate, complete, accessible, and usable, thereby enhancing decision-making processes and overall service delivery (Pacific Records, n.d.). In organizational practice, nearly every administrative action generates documentation—from correspondence and internal memoranda to legal orders and citizen petitions—that must be managed systematically. Effective clerical operations not only streamline internal workflows but also strengthen public trust by facilitating prompt and appropriate responses to citizen inquiries (Sharma, n.d.).

In Azerbaijan, as in many administrative systems, clerical work (known locally as *kargüzarlıq*) serves as the backbone of organizational governance. It encompasses the preparation, processing, registration, circulation, and archiving of documents that reflect institutional activities and decisions. The significance of this function is formally reinforced in legislation, such as Presidential Decree No. 935

[1] Huseynov, T. V. Lecturer, Department of General Law, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: tofiqhuseynov@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-0993-3958

of 27 September 2003, which approved a unified instruction for record keeping across all state bodies and state-affiliated organizations (Azerbaijan President, 2003). This decree established a standardized clerical system for government institutions, ensuring that document handling procedures remain consistent across agencies. Such standardization promotes procedural efficiency and legal compliance, as official records must be properly maintained to preserve their integrity and satisfy oversight requirements (U.S. Department of the Interior, n.d.).

Administrative practice distinguishes between **general** and **special** clerical work. General clerical work encompasses routine correspondence and documentation processes carried out across all departments within an institution. It involves universal procedures for document preparation, registration, circulation, and preservation. Special clerical work, by contrast, pertains to document-handling procedures tailored to a specific department, service area, or document type. These may include confidential materials, personnel files, or technical and specialized records that follow distinct protocols. Despite their differences, both forms of clerical work operate within the overarching institutional framework and are governed by unified regulations.

This study adopts a deductive approach, beginning with general clerical practices and narrowing the focus to specialized clerical procedures. The analysis draws on administrative laws, presidential decrees, methodological guidelines, and scholarly literature. By integrating broad observations with specific legal provisions, the study identifies patterns and principles characteristic of Azerbaijan's records management system. The subsequent sections outline procedural rules, discuss key principles of effective document management, and describe the structural organization required to maintain a functional clerical service. The overarching aim is to demonstrate how a robust clerical system contributes to administrative efficiency, institutional accountability, and adherence to the rule of law.

Legal and Organizational Framework of Clerical Work

All functions of public or private institutions are captured in documents that constitute official records. These may be categorized as **official (service) documents**, which pertain to organizational activities and collective interests, and **personal documents**, which relate to individual matters. Service documents include laws, decrees, orders, memoranda, letters, reports, and other materials generated in the course of governance or business operations. Their management requires a structured clerical system regulated by formal legal and procedural norms.

In Azerbaijan, the legal framework governing clerical work is comprehensive. Under Presidential Decree No. 935 (2003), all state authorities, organizations, and enterprises—including those partially or fully state-owned—must conduct clerical operations in accordance with a unified instruction (Azerbaijan President, 2003). This instruction standardizes document preparation, registration, execution, and archiving procedures. It also specifies that clerical work must be conducted in the state language (Azerbaijani) and that each institution must assign personnel or establish a dedicated clerical office responsible for documentation processes. Oversight of compliance is typically delegated to a documents administration department or an equivalent supervisory body within higher executive institutions (Huseynov, 2025).

The unified state clerical system ensures that government agencies—including ministries, local executive authorities, judicial and law enforcement bodies, educational institutions, and financial

organizations—adhere to consistent documentation standards. Normative legal acts provide detailed guidance on document handling procedures. Additional presidential decrees regulate the management of classified documents, as well as procedures for reviewing and responding to citizen petitions, applications, and complaints. These regulations collectively ensure that clerical work meets fundamental standards of formality, security, and procedural accuracy.

Historically, clerical work has played a central role in Azerbaijan's administrative development. After the proclamation of the Azerbaijan Democratic Republic in 1918, government institutions were required to organize clerical processes systematically and in conformity with national administrative norms. Accurate record keeping was considered integral to state-building efforts and to the effective functioning of government agencies.

In contemporary practice, clerical work is typically centralized in a specialized administrative unit—commonly referred to as the **chancery**, **secretariat**, or **records office**. This unit operates under an internal charter aligned with national standards. Depending on organizational size, a chancery may include multiple departments and highly specialized staff. Larger government institutions maintain fully equipped documentation centers, whereas smaller agencies may assign clerical responsibilities to a single secretary or a compact documentation bureau. In such cases, clerical work remains centralized; however, in large or geographically distributed agencies, certain subdivisions may employ decentralized clerical teams that still operate under unified state policies (Hamilton, 1990; Pugh et al., 1968).

Regardless of the specific administrative model employed, the core responsibilities of a clerical or records management service remain consistent across organizations. The primary objectives of such a service typically include the following:

• **Document intake and registration.** This involves receiving all incoming documents—whether delivered by mail, email, fax, or courier—and registering them in a physical logbook or electronic system (Suchman, 1983). Each document is assigned an identification number, and key details such as the date received, sender, and subject are recorded to ensure that no item is misplaced or overlooked.

• **Document distribution.** Once registered, documents are sorted according to subject matter or destination and forwarded to the appropriate departments or responsible officials for action (Pugh et al., 1968). In centralized systems, the clerical office ensures prompt routing so that each unit receives the materials necessary to perform its duties.

• **Preparation and dispatch of outgoing documents.** Clerical personnel prepare official outgoing correspondence—including letters, responses, and orders—in accordance with established formatting rules. These documents are copied as needed, sent through postal or electronic channels, and entered into the outgoing registration log for accountability (Pugh et al., 1968).

• **Monitoring and deadline control.** The clerical service tracks documents under execution to ensure that assigned tasks are completed within specified deadlines (Hamilton, 1990). Staff frequently employ reminder systems or digital workflow tools to notify officials when deadlines approach, thereby reinforcing administrative timeliness.

• **Retrieval and follow-up.** Completed documents or departmental responses are retrieved and reviewed to verify that all required actions have been performed. If a matter remains unresolved by the designated deadline, the clerical office issues reminders or escalates the issue to management to prevent administrative lapses.

• **Copying and duplication.** Documents are reproduced—through photocopying, printing, or scanning—when additional copies are required for internal distribution or backup purposes (Council, 2013). Although modern electronic systems reduce the need for physical duplication, such tasks remain a routine clerical function.

• **File formation and archival preparation.** Completed documents are organized into structured files according to an established classification scheme. The clerical office ensures that each file is correctly assembled, labeled, and maintained. After the retention period for active use expires, files are prepared for transfer to institutional archives for long-term preservation (Azerbaijan President, 2003).

• **Records storage and maintenance.** Clerical staff manage both active records used by employees and inactive or historical records maintained in archives. This includes applying records retention schedules and overseeing the secure disposal of documents in accordance with legal requirements.

• **Methodological guidance and training.** In many institutions, the central clerical office provides training and methodological support to departmental staff to ensure proper document handling procedures (Huseynov, 2025). This helps maintain consistency and enhances the overall quality of records management practices.

• **Handling citizens' communications.** In public agencies, the clerical service is responsible for registering citizen petitions, applications, and complaints. Staff must ensure that these submissions are formally logged, forwarded to relevant officials, and answered within legally mandated time frames. Effective handling of citizen correspondence strengthens administrative accountability and public confidence.

These responsibilities demonstrate that the clerical office functions as a **central communication hub**, linking external inputs with internal administrative processes. By fulfilling these duties, the records management system supports informed decision-making and ensures that official actions are properly documented and traceable.

Personnel transitions are also governed by formal procedures to preserve administrative continuity. When a department head or authorized official leaves their position, all files and documents under their responsibility must be transferred to the successor or interim appointee through an official **handover act**. This document lists all pending and completed materials, along with their status, and is signed by both parties. A copy is retained by the clerical office as an institutional record (Azerbaijan President, 2003; GovOS Team, 2021). Likewise, when any employee responsible for specific documentation is reassigned or dismissed, they must formally transfer all entrusted materials to the next designated officer. These procedures safeguard institutional memory and prevent disruptions in administrative work.

Principles of Organizing Clerical Work

The organization of clerical work within state bodies and enterprises is guided by a set of foundational principles. These principles, which structure the management of documentation, can be divided into two main categories: **general principles** and **special principles**.

General principles apply uniformly across institutions regardless of their specific administrative functions. They create a standardized and coherent approach to records management within both public and private sectors (Huseynov, 2025). Although the purposes of organizations may vary—from ministries and universities to private corporations—the fundamental methods of document handling remain consistent and regulated under unified clerical standards.

Special principles, on the other hand, address the unique requirements of particular sectors or operational contexts (Huseynov, 2025). These principles allow organizations to develop tailored procedures that accommodate specialized documentation needs. For instance, financial institutions may incorporate additional processes to comply with banking regulations, while defense-related departments may adopt enhanced protocols for managing classified information. Thus, special principles build upon the general framework while ensuring effective record management within specialized domains.

In modern administrative practice, the development of a clerical system also reflects efforts to incorporate technological innovations. Over the past several decades, electronic record-keeping systems have been widely adopted to accelerate document circulation and optimize correspondence handling. These digital systems—including e-government platforms and electronic document workflow software—significantly enhance the speed and accessibility of information exchange (GovOS Team, 2021). Electronic records management is now widely recognized as a standard mechanism for ensuring the preservation, systematic organization, and secure disposition of institutional records (Pacific Records, n.d.). By shifting from paper-based procedures to digital workflows, organizations can achieve greater efficiency, security, and accessibility of documentation (Sharma, n.d.).

In addition to these general categories, a set of specific operational principles governs daily clerical activities. These principles ensure the optimal functioning of the clerical service and support the administrative needs of management.

1. Specialization

The principle of specialization requires that clerical duties be distributed among staff members in a manner that allows each employee to focus on a specific set of tasks. One clerk may manage document registration, another may oversee the archives, and another may prepare outgoing correspondence. This division of labor increases efficiency and accuracy, as each staff member becomes highly proficient in their assigned responsibilities (Hamilton, 1990).

2. Parallelism

Parallelism involves carrying out independent clerical processes simultaneously rather than sequentially. For example, incoming mail can be registered while outgoing correspondence is being

prepared, without delaying one task for the other. This approach reduces overall processing time and increases efficiency, especially in high-volume offices (Pugh et al., 1968).

3. Streamlining

Streamlining refers to designing the shortest and most direct pathways for documents to move from creation to execution. It aims to eliminate redundant steps and bureaucratic delays. For example, a document needing approval from two officials should move directly between those officials rather than repeatedly returning to the central office. Streamlining ensures uninterrupted and efficient document flow (Suchman, 1983).

4. Continuity

Continuity emphasizes the need for uninterrupted clerical work. This may require staggered staff schedules or backup personnel so that critical functions—such as the receipt and registration of documents—continue even when individuals are absent. Ensuring continuous operations prevents administrative delays and enhances institutional responsiveness.

5. Rhythm and Timeliness

A consistent work rhythm ensures that clerical tasks are performed on a predictable schedule. For instance, incoming correspondence might be distributed each morning, drafts prepared in the afternoon, and outgoing documents dispatched by the end of the business day. This rhythmic workflow prevents backlogs and ensures timely completion of administrative processes (Council, 2013).

Implementing these principles requires not only clear regulatory guidance but also adequate staffing, training, and technological infrastructure. Specialization, for example, has encouraged many institutions to invest in professional development for clerical staff to strengthen their knowledge of modern information management practices. Parallelism is significantly enhanced by electronic document management systems, which allow multiple users to work simultaneously on different aspects of document processing. Streamlining, continuity, and rhythmic organization together create a clerical environment that is predictable, efficient, and adaptable.

In Azerbaijan's public administration system, these principles are reinforced by the requirement that each institution maintain a unified documentation service, as mandated by national regulations (Azerbaijan President, 2003; Huseynov, 2025). In practice, this means ministries and government agencies operate centralized clerical departments responsible for implementing standardized procedures, templates, and forms consistent with state normative acts. These centralized offices not only perform the technical tasks of document processing but also ensure that clerical principles are correctly applied across all organizational units.

Discussion: General vs. Special Clerical Work in Practice

With the organizational framework and underlying principles established, it is possible to distinguish more clearly how **general** and **special** clerical work operate in practice. General clerical work encompasses the full range of routine correspondence and documentation processed by an institution. This includes everyday internal memos, administrative orders, and external communications with partner organizations or stakeholders. These documents are managed**按照** through standardized

procedures such as registration, distribution, and archiving, following the general clerical principles that ensure consistency and predictability across the institution (Huseynov, 2025).

Special clerical work, by contrast, involves document categories that require distinct handling due to their content, confidentiality level, or legal significance. For example, the management of classified materials—such as confidential or secret records—is governed by specialized procedures that may include separate registration logs, restricted-access safes, and controlled circulation protocols. Similarly, legal case files in judicial or investigative institutions follow detailed documentation standards prescribed by law, including requirements for maintaining a clear chain of custody (Suchman, 1983). In academic institutions, student records and examination materials form another type of special clerical domain, governed by privacy regulations and retention policies that differ from general correspondence.

Importantly, special clerical work does not function independently of the general clerical system. Instead, it operates as a **subset** that supplements general procedures with additional protocols tailored to the needs of a specific category of records. For instance, a ministry's main clerical office may receive and register all incoming documents but forward financial materials to a specialized accounting clerical unit. This specialized unit applies accounting-specific documentation standards while ensuring that documents remain tracked through the central system (Pugh et al., 1968). Thus, special clerical units work in coordination with the central clerical service, preserving institutional cohesion and preventing gaps in document oversight.

In a large organization, the structure typically includes a central clerical department (chancery) responsible for registering and routing all documents. Different types of records may then be processed by specialized sub-units, such as a Personnel Clerical Desk for human resources documents, a Technical Documents Bureau for engineering materials, or a Secret Documents Unit for sensitive information. Each special unit may employ secure storage systems, categorized filing protocols, field-specific software, or legal compliance measures such as personal data protection standards. Despite their distinct workflows, these units remain linked to the central clerical office for archival transfer or final disposition, ensuring that the organization maintains a unified and comprehensive records management system (Hamilton, 1990).

The rationale behind dividing clerical responsibilities into general and special domains lies in the pursuit of operational efficiency and accuracy. General clerical staff can manage high-volume routine work without requiring specialized subject-matter expertise, while specialized staff can focus on areas demanding heightened precision, confidentiality, or regulatory compliance. This structure reinforces the principle of specialization within clerical work, extending it from task-based specialization to content-based specialization as well.

Conclusion

Clerical work—also referred to as records management—serves as an essential pillar of administrative effectiveness in both public institutions and private organizations. The establishment of clear procedural rules, legal standards, and organizational principles is fundamental to ensuring that clerical operations function as the backbone of institutional activity. A well-organized clerical system ensures that every incoming document is captured, assigned for action, monitored, and preserved

appropriately. Through this process, organizational leadership receives accurate and timely information, decision-making is supported, and accountability is maintained (GovOS Team, 2021).

Differentiating between **general** and **special** clerical work allows organizations to manage the full spectrum of records efficiently—from ordinary correspondence to highly sensitive documents. General clerical procedures promote consistent document flow across all units, while special procedures ensure that documents requiring additional care or legal protection receive the specialized handling they demand. Together, these approaches create a robust framework for comprehensive records management.

The principles of clerical organization—specialization, parallelism, streamlining, continuity, and rhythmic execution—significantly enhance the operational efficiency of clerical services. When implemented effectively, these principles produce a system that is responsive, accurate, and resilient. Such systems reduce the likelihood of administrative bottlenecks, errors, and document loss while ensuring that institutional processes remain transparent and accountable (Council, 2013).

Technological advancements have also transformed clerical work. Electronic document management systems, digital communication platforms, and automated workflow tools have accelerated document processing, enabled secure long-term storage, and increased multi-user accessibility. Adopting such systems supports key clerical principles by enabling parallel workflows, minimizing interruptions, and streamlining document transmission (Sharma, n.d.). Numerous organizations and government bodies that have transitioned to electronic records management report improvements in both efficiency and service quality (Pacific Records, n.d.). Furthermore, digital systems help institutions comply with legal requirements concerning document preservation, access, and disposal (U.S. Department of the Interior, n.d.).

Ultimately, a well-designed clerical work organization contributes directly to effective governance and institutional success. Clear and systematically maintained records enhance transparency by creating reliable documentation that can be referenced by stakeholders. Accurate records support informed decision-making, protect institutional and individual rights, and preserve organizational memory. As this analysis demonstrates, investing in principled and technologically supported clerical systems—while distinguishing appropriately between general and special documentation needs—yields substantial benefits in terms of administrative performance, public trust, and long-term organizational stability.

References

Azerbaijan President. (2003, September 27). *Presidential Decree No. 935 on Approval of the Instruction for Record Keeping in State Bodies, Legal Entities, and State-Financed Organizations*. Baku: Official Gazette. Retrieved from CIS Legislation: http://cis-legislation.com/document.fwx?rgn=17471

Council, G. L. (2013). *Handbook for Clerks of Works: Greater London Council Department of Architecture and Civic Design*. Elsevier.

GovOS Team. (2021, October 20). *What is Records Management & Why is it Important?* [Blog post]. GovOS. https://govos.com/blog/what-is-records-management/

Hamilton, G. (1990). *Knowledge and skill requirements in clerical work* (Doctoral dissertation, University of British Columbia).

Huseynov, T. (2025). Legal bases for the organization of clerical work. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis Et Linguarum*, *2*(1), 229-234. https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.02500129

Pacific Records. (n.d.). *Compliant Records Management for Government Agencies*. Retrieved October 10, 2025, from https://pacific-records.com/compliant-records-management-for-government-agencies/

Pugh, D. S., Hickson, D. J., Hinings, C. R., & Turner, C. (1968). Dimensions of organization structure. *Administrative science quarterly*, 65-105.

Sharma, T. (n.d.). *The Importance of Record Keeping in Government Departments*. RecordsKeeper Blog. Retrieved October 10, 2025, from https://www.recordskeeper.ai/importance-record-keeping-government-departments/

Suchman, L. A. (1983). Office procedure as practical action: models of work and system design. *ACM Transactions on Information Systems (TOIS)*, *1*(4), 320-328.

U.S. Department of the Interior. (n.d.). *Records Management Questions – Why Records Management?* Retrieved from https://www.doi.gov/ocio/policy-mgmt-support/information-and-records-management/records-management-questions

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Design and Implementation of an Intelligent Analytical System for Forecasting Key Economic Indicators

[1] Togrul Aliyev

Accepted: 12.01.2025
Published: 12.09.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110011

Abstract; This article examines the design and implementation of an intelligent analytical system for forecasting key economic indicators within a global, data-rich environment. Traditional econometric models often struggle to capture nonlinear dynamics and rapidly shifting conditions, underscoring the need for more adaptive forecasting tools. Drawing on advancements in machine learning, deep neural networks, and intelligent decision support systems, the study proposes a modular forecasting architecture that integrates multi-source data, automated preprocessing, hybrid modeling strategies, and interactive decision-support interfaces. The system leverages both classical statistical models and contemporary AI techniques to improve predictive accuracy, enhance interpretability, and support scenario-based planning. Practical considerations—including data quality, computational requirements, model transparency, and the integration of human expertise—are discussed, along with emerging innovations such as transformer-based time-series models and hybrid AI–economics frameworks. The study concludes that intelligent analytical systems hold significant potential to transform economic forecasting by enabling more timely, data-driven, and resilient decision-making across policy and industry contexts.

Keywords: *intelligent forecasting system, machine learning, economic indicators*

Introduction

Accurate forecasting of key economic indicators—such as GDP growth, inflation, and employment—is critical for governments and businesses worldwide. Economic forecasts guide policy decisions, investment strategies, and resource planning (Investopedia, n.d.). Yet making reliable predictions is notoriously difficult, especially in an increasingly complex global environment marked by unexpected shocks. The world economy in recent years has faced unprecedented uncertainty from events such as the COVID-19 pandemic, geopolitical conflicts, supply chain disruptions, and rapid policy shifts. Indeed, the global outlook remains highly uncertain amid the lingering effects of multiple shocks—including pandemics, wars, and energy crises—which complicate traditional forecasting efforts (International Finance Corporation, 2023). Conventional forecasting approaches, often based on linear models and expert judgment, have shown notable limitations; for example, economists famously failed to predict the vast majority of recessions in advance (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). These challenges underscore the need for more intelligent analytics in economic forecasting,

[1] Aliyev, T. Master's Student in Architecture and Engineering, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: togruleliyev03062020@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-6000-2753

leveraging advanced computational methods to improve accuracy and provide decision support in real time.

This article takes a global perspective on the challenges of economic forecasting and presents an integrated approach to address them through an intelligent analytical system for key indicator prediction. We discuss the theoretical foundations of modern forecasting, including time-series models and contemporary machine learning techniques, and then detail the design and implementation of a system that combines these methods into an effective decision-support tool. In particular, we explore how machine learning (ML), neural networks, and intelligent decision-support components can be used to analyze vast multisource datasets and forecast economic trends adaptively. We also illustrate the system's architecture and functionality with diagrams and examples, and we examine its advantages, limitations, and potential in real-world economic prediction scenarios. By bridging theoretical concepts with practical design insights, the article aims to demonstrate how an intelligent analytical forecasting system can enhance foresight and strategic decision-making on a global scale.

Global Forecasting Challenges and the Need for Intelligent Analytics

Forecasting economic conditions on a global scale is fraught with complexity. Economic indicators are influenced by a web of interrelated factors—from domestic policy decisions to international trade dynamics and exogenous shocks—making their future values inherently difficult to predict. Traditional econometric models often struggle to accommodate this complexity. They typically rely on a limited set of indicators and assume relatively stable historical patterns, which may break down during turbulent periods. A recurring criticism is that classical forecasts tend to be overly conservative and frequently miss critical turning points such as financial crises or recessions (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). The 2008 global financial crisis and the 2020 pandemic-induced downturn, for instance, exposed the shortcomings of many standard forecasting models that failed to foresee the magnitude of these events. In today's climate, heightened geopolitical tensions and policy uncertainties further cloud the predictive horizon. As recent analysis highlights, the global economic outlook remains deeply uncertain due to the prolonged effects of multiple shocks, including pandemics, geopolitical conflict, surging inflation, and rapid monetary tightening (International Finance Corporation, 2023). These conditions make clear that static or simplistic forecasting approaches are inadequate for capturing the fast-evolving reality.

The complexity of global data presents both a challenge and an opportunity. On one hand, forecasters must contend with Big Data—enormous volumes of economic and financial information generated from diverse sources such as international trade flows, real-time market data, news feeds, social media sentiment, and satellite observations. Extracting meaningful signals from such high-dimensional data is non-trivial, and traditional manual analysis can be overwhelmed. On the other hand, advances in data science and artificial intelligence provide new tools to harness this data deluge. Intelligent analytics refers to the application of AI and machine learning to analyze data and detect patterns that humans or simple models might miss. Modern AI can rapidly process unstructured information (for example, parsing news text or analyzing satellite imagery as a proxy for economic activity) and incorporate it into forecasts (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024; Celik et al., 2024). This expansion of the data frontier allows economic models to account for a broader array of signals than before. In fact, artificial

intelligence is already transforming economic analysis in key ways: by expanding data inputs, accelerating analytical workflows, and improving predictive power (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). Machine learning algorithms, for example, can automate data cleaning and structuring (Celik et al., 2024) and can capture nonlinear patterns in economic indicators that traditional linear models fail to detect (Cook et al., 2017). The net effect is that AI-powered forecasting tools can detect emerging economic trends or financial stress conditions earlier and more reliably, enabling policymakers and businesses to act proactively (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024).

Given these developments, there is a compelling need to integrate intelligent analytics into economic forecasting systems. An intelligent analytical system for forecasting is essentially a specialized form of an intelligent decision-support system (IDSS) tailored to economic environments. Such a system can be defined as an information environment that uses advanced technological tools and analytical methods to support decision-makers in making effective, data-driven judgments (Lv et al., 2025; Prusova et al., 2025). In the forecasting context, an intelligent system ingests large quantities of economic data, applies AI and ML models to generate predictions, and presents its results—often with visualizations or scenario simulations—to human analysts. The objective is not to replace economists but to augment their analytical capabilities: helping them process more information, evaluate a wider set of possible scenarios, and make more confident policy or business decisions. In a highly volatile global environment, an intelligent analytical forecasting system functions as a continuously learning assistant, adapting to new information and updating forecasts in real time. The following sections examine the theoretical foundations of such systems and outline their practical design and implementation to address global forecasting challenges effectively.

Theoretical Foundations of Intelligent Economic Forecasting

Modern economic forecasting rests on two major pillars: traditional statistical econometrics and contemporary machine learning (ML) and artificial intelligence (AI). An effective intelligent forecasting system typically combines elements of both.

Traditional Time-Series Approaches

Forecasting has long relied on models such as ARIMA, VAR, exponential smoothing, and structural economic frameworks like DSGE models, which simulate how policy or shocks propagate through an economy. These models are useful under stable conditions and provide interpretability but rely on linear assumptions and often struggle with nonlinear dynamics or unprecedented events (Cook et al., 2017). Their performance declines when economic relationships shift rapidly or when historical patterns no longer apply. These limitations created demand for more adaptive, data-driven forecasting methods.

Rise of Machine Learning and Neural Networks

In recent years, forecasting has been transformed by Big Data and ML methods (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). ML models automatically identify complex patterns, handle high-dimensional data, and capture nonlinear relationships beyond the reach of classical econometrics (Celik et al., 2024). Deep learning, especially recurrent neural networks (RNNs) and LSTM architectures, has proven particularly effective for time-dependent economic data. LSTM-based models capture long-term dependencies and have outperformed traditional forecasts in several

domains, including unemployment prediction (Lytvyn et al., 2025; Cook et al., 2017). The core principles of modern ML forecasting now include regularization for high-dimensional data, rigorous validation, and modeling of nonlinear dynamics.

Hybrid and Intelligent Decision-Support Approaches

Current research emphasizes hybrid strategies that integrate both statistical and ML methods. For example, ARIMA–LSTM or SARIMA–MLP combinations allow classical models to capture trend and seasonality while ML models learn residual nonlinear patterns (Lv et al., 2025). Although hybrids often improve accuracy, they increase system complexity and require careful integration to avoid overfitting (Prusova et al., 2025).

Beyond forecasting algorithms, an Intelligent Decision Support System (IDSS) incorporates data management, model selection, scenario testing, and user-oriented analytics. An IDSS automatically processes large volumes of economic data, applies advanced models, and generates interpretable insights for policy or strategic decisions (Lv et al., 2025). The "intelligent" component reflects continuous learning, adaptability, and the ability to highlight emerging risks or significant indicator changes.

In essence, the theoretical foundation for an intelligent analytical forecasting system blends econometric models, machine learning techniques, and decision-support principles. This integrated foundation enables systems that are more flexible, data-rich, and capable of responding to today's rapidly changing economic environment. The next section translates these theoretical insights into a practical system architecture.

System Design and Implementation of the Intelligent Analytical Forecasting System

Designing an intelligent analytical system for economic forecasting requires careful consideration of its core components and how they interact. Broadly, the system can be conceptualized in a modular architecture comprising: (1) data input and management layers, (2) analytical and modeling engines (including ML/AI models for forecasting), and (3) a decision support interface for users. Figure 1 illustrates a high-level architecture of such a system, highlighting the flow from raw data to actionable forecasts.

Figure 1. Conceptual architecture of an intelligent analytical forecasting system. This architecture integrates data acquisition from diverse sources, preprocessing modules, feature extraction components, and integration mechanisms that collectively enable intelligent decision support capabilities (Zhang et al., 2025). In this multi-layered design, heterogeneous data (structured databases, semi-structured feeds, unstructured text, etc.) are fused through a series of analytical processes, and the resulting insights or forecasts are delivered to decision-makers via interactive tools. The architecture reflects key IDSS elements—a data layer (for managing databases and data streams), a model layer (housing various forecasting and analysis models), and a user interface layer (for visualization and human–computer interaction) (Lv et al., 2025).

Data Sources and Integration

The foundation of the system is a robust data infrastructure capable of handling multi-source, multi-format data. Key economic indicators come from national statistical agencies (GDP, inflation), central

banks (interest rates, monetary aggregates), financial markets (indexes, yields, commodity prices), international organizations (trade volumes, PMI indices), and more. Intelligent systems also ingest alternative data such as news sentiment, social media signals, mobility data, satellite imagery, supply-chain indicators, and climate data for sectoral forecasts. These sources produce structured, semi-structured, and unstructured data, requiring connectors and pipelines for automated acquisition and updates.

Once collected, a preprocessing layer cleans and transforms inputs. This includes handling missing values, smoothing outliers, frequency alignment (e.g., converting daily market data to monthly), and standardization or normalization for comparability (Prusova et al., 2025; Zhang et al., 2025). Unstructured data are processed using NLP techniques to extract sentiment scores or topic metrics—e.g., quantifying central bank communication tone or media sentiment and incorporating these as predictive features (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). Data fusion across sources uncovers relationships not visible in isolated datasets (Zhang et al., 2025). For instance, rising logistics costs combined with specific keyword trends in news may signal inflationary pressure. A metadata management component documents data lineage and quality for transparency and anomaly detection (Prusova et al., 2025).

Forecasting Models and Analytical Engine

At the core of the system is a suite of forecasting models. Intelligent systems typically adopt a multi-model or ensemble structure where different models specialize in various aspects of prediction.

• Baseline Statistical Models:

ARIMA, exponential smoothing, and VAR models serve as benchmarks. They run efficiently and capture trends or seasonality, providing interpretable baselines.

• Machine Learning Models:

Tree-based ensembles such as Random Forests and Gradient Boosting Machines handle large feature sets and detect nonlinear interactions (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). Support Vector Machines may be used for classification tasks, such as recession probability estimation. These models require hyperparameter tuning and cross-validation (Celik et al., 2024).

• Deep Learning Models:

Neural networks—especially LSTM and transformer-based architectures—capture complex temporal dependencies. LSTM models can learn lead–lag relationships (Lv et al., 2025), while transformer models capture long-range patterns and rare events (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). These models are powerful but resource-intensive and must be monitored to avoid overfitting (Celik et al., 2024). Hybrid approaches such as macroeconomic hybrid models, combining ML algorithms with structured economic components, have shown superior performance when data is limited (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024).

• Expert Rules and Knowledge Integration:

Rule-based modules or fuzzy-logic systems can adjust model outputs under extreme conditions (e.g., natural disasters, policy shocks) (Zhang et al., 2025). This allows embedding human judgment within an automated analytical framework.

Forecasting outputs include point estimates, probabilistic distributions, and risk metrics. Techniques such as quantile regression or simulation can estimate prediction intervals or recession odds (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). Ensemble strategies—bagging, boosting, stacking—combine model strengths and enhance robustness (Prusova et al., 2025; Celik et al., 2024). For example, a stacker model may rely more heavily on neural networks during volatile periods and on linear models during stable ones.

Intelligent Decision Support Interface

A defining feature of the system is its decision support component, which translates analytical outputs into actionable insights. This involves dashboards, interactive tools, and reporting mechanisms.

• Visualization of Forecasts:

Dashboards display predicted trajectories with uncertainty bands and scenario comparisons.

• Model Explainability Tools:

Explainable AI techniques, such as SHAP values, show which indicators drive predictions. Adjustments based on expert rules are annotated for transparency.

• Alerting and Scenario Analysis:

The system monitors risks (e.g., recession probabilities exceeding thresholds) and generates alerts. Users can modify assumptions—e.g., raising oil price expectations—and immediately view adjusted forecasts. This converts the forecasting engine into a dynamic decision-support platform (Lv et al., 2025).

To demonstrate the kind of output the system might produce, consider a simple forecasting scenario. Figure 2 below shows a sample forecast of a hypothetical economic indicator along with the actual historical values, as it might appear on a user's dashboard. In this illustrative example, the model's forecast begins at a certain point in time (indicated by the vertical line separating historical data from forecast) and projects the indicator's trajectory forward.

Figure 2. Sample forecasting result for a key economic indicator (using synthetic data), illustrating predicted values versus actual historical values. In this example, the forecast (dashed line) picks up at the point where the actual observed data (solid line) ends, and it projects the future trend and seasonality of the series. We see that the model's forecast closely follows the upward trend and periodic fluctuations present in the historical data, indicating that it has learned the underlying pattern. Such visualizations allow decision-makers to compare the forecast trajectory with real outcomes and gauge the model's performance. By examining where the forecast deviates from reality (once actual data becomes available), analysts can identify potential model errors or structural breaks and update the system accordingly. This feedback loop is integral to the system's ongoing improvement.

Implementation Considerations

From an implementation standpoint, building this system requires a combination of data engineering and machine learning operations. A possible tech stack might include databases or data lakes for storing historical time series, an ETL (extract-transform-load) pipeline for continuous data updating, and a computing environment for model training and execution (such as Python/R with ML libraries

or a platform like TensorFlow/PyTorch for deep learning models). The system could be deployed in the cloud to leverage scalable storage and compute resources, which is especially important when retraining complex models or handling streaming data. An orchestrator—such as Apache Airflow or another workflow tool—can automate regular model retraining and forecast generation (for instance, updating forecasts monthly when new economic data are released).

To ensure reliability, rigorous testing is required. Backtesting the system on historical periods helps validate whether it would have reasonably predicted past turning points or trends. Each component model can be evaluated against hold-out samples, and the ensemble forecast is compared to actual outcomes using error metrics such as MAE, RMSE, or MAPE. Version control for models and data, along with governance policies, is essential when forecasts inform high-stakes decisions. Because an IDSS in economics might eventually be used to justify policy moves or investment allocations, auditability and transparency become crucial. Stakeholders may require documentation outlining how the system works, what data it uses, and its historical performance.

Real-world adoption of such intelligent systems is already underway in leading institutions. For example, the European Central Bank has developed an AI-based system called **Cassandra**, which analyzes financial news using language models and applies boosting and neural network techniques to detect early warning signals of banking stress (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). Likewise, researchers at the **Bank for International Settlements (BIS)** have created prototypes that combine recurrent neural networks with large language models to forecast episodes of foreign-exchange market stress—integrating quantitative predictions with qualitative text analysis to detect crises months in advance (Celik et al., 2024). These cases show that intelligent forecasting systems are not speculative but already essential analytical tools. By designing the proposed system with modularity, scalability, and adaptability, we ensure that it can incorporate new data sources or modeling techniques as they arise—for example, when new financial indicators emerge or superior algorithms become available.

Advantages, Limitations, and Potential of Intelligent Analytical Systems in Economic Forecasting

Key Advantages: Intelligent analytical forecasting systems offer several clear benefits over traditional approaches:

• **Improved Predictive Accuracy:** By leveraging machine learning and ensemble methods, these systems often achieve more accurate forecasts, especially in complex scenarios. Empirical studies show that advanced models (e.g., deep neural networks or boosted ensembles) can outperform classical models in predicting economic indicators (Cook et al., 2017; Kitova et al., 2016). The ability to capture nonlinear patterns and interactions means the system can detect subtle signals—such as an interaction between credit growth and housing prices foreshadowing a recession—that a linear model might overlook (Bloomberg Professional Services, 2024). Higher accuracy translates to better-informed decisions and potentially significant economic value.

• **Integration of Diverse Data (Holistic Analysis):** Intelligent systems can ingest and process a far wider range of data than any human analyst or traditional model. This includes real-time and high-frequency data, textual and sentiment information, and even visual inputs. AI expands the data frontier by extracting signals from unstructured sources such as news and satellite imagery (Bloomberg

Professional Services, 2024). By combining multiple sources, the system builds a richer contextual view of the global economy and identifies cross-border relationships traditional models miss.

• **Adaptive Learning and Timeliness:** Unlike static models, intelligent systems can continuously learn from new data. Automation in data handling and model retraining significantly speeds up the forecasting cycle—tasks that once took analysts weeks can be completed in minutes (Investopedia, n.d.). As fresh data arrives, the system updates its forecasts, making it better equipped to react to rapid changes or regime shifts.

• **Decision Support and Insights:** Beyond producing forecasts, intelligent systems support the decision-making process by explaining predictions and highlighting key drivers (Lv et al., 2025). Scenario analysis and risk alerts transform the forecasting system into an active early-warning tool. An IDSS aims to improve decision quality by delivering clear, data-driven insights to non-technical users (Prusova et al., 2025).

Current Limitations

Despite their strengths, intelligent forecasting systems face challenges that must be addressed:

• **Data Quality and Availability:** The system's performance depends heavily on the quality of the underlying data. Issues like missing values, reporting delays, revisions, and inconsistent measurements across countries can degrade accuracy (Zhang et al., 2025). Big data can amplify noise along with signal, making cleaning and validation essential steps.

• **Model Risk and Uncertainty:** Complex ML models can overfit or fail under new economic regimes. Even with rigorous out-of-sample validation (Celik & Co-authors, 2024), uncertainty cannot be eliminated. Intelligent systems may detect patterns that are merely spurious correlations in high-dimensional datasets. Thus, expert judgment remains indispensable.

• **Interpretability and Transparency:** Many advanced ML models operate as "black boxes," making their predictions difficult to interpret for policymakers. Explainability tools help, but the trade-off between interpretability and accuracy persists. Hybrid models—combining ML with interpretable structures—are one promising avenue (Kasabov et al., 2016).

• **Resource Intensity:** Building and maintaining intelligent systems is costly. They require computational infrastructure, skilled staff, and continuous monitoring. Smaller institutions may struggle to adopt such systems. Even after implementation, ensuring that human analysts remain in the loop is essential to avoid over-reliance on automated outputs.

Future Potential

Despite current challenges, intelligent forecasting systems have immense potential for future development:

• **Advances in Algorithms:** New forecasting models—such as transformer-based time-series architectures—are rapidly evolving (Celik & Co-authors, 2024). Although not yet superior in all contexts, they promise major improvements in long-range forecasting.

• **Hybrid AI-Economics Models:** The future lies in combining machine learning flexibility with economic theory. Approaches such as the macro-random-forest model (Bloomberg Professional

Services, 2024) demonstrate how embedding economic constraints into ML systems produces more reliable, realistic forecasts.

• **Real-Time and Automated Decision Systems:** Intelligent systems may evolve toward real-time analytics and semi-automated decision-making. Financial markets already use such tools in algorithmic trading. In public policy, continuous streaming forecasts could help governments respond rapidly to emerging risks.

• **Wider Accessibility and Customization:** As ML tools become more accessible and cloud-based solutions more affordable, even smaller institutions and developing economies can deploy intelligent forecasting platforms. Custom systems may emerge for agriculture, urban economics, or specific industries, democratizing advanced analytics.

Intelligent analytical systems represent a transformative advancement in economic forecasting. They enhance accuracy, broaden data usage, and strengthen decision-making but must be deployed with awareness of their limitations and with human expertise firmly integrated into the process. With continued innovation, these systems may soon become as indispensable to economic analysis as diagnostic systems are to modern medicine.

Conclusion

The design and implementation of an intelligent analytical system for forecasting key economic indicators offers a powerful response to the challenges of modern economic prediction. In taking a global perspective, we recognize that today's forecasting environment is more complex and data-rich than ever, demanding tools that can assimilate vast information and adapt to rapid changes. By grounding our approach in sound theoretical foundations – from time-series econometrics to machine learning and decision support theory – and by embracing state-of-the-art technologies in practice, we can build systems that significantly improve our foresight. The system described in this article integrates diverse data sources, advanced analytical models (including neural networks and ensemble learners), and an interactive decision support interface. Such a system has demonstrated the ability to produce more accurate and timely forecasts, to provide early warnings of risks, and to support decision-makers with deeper insights into the driving forces of economic trends.

The advantages of intelligent forecasting systems are evident in both research and real-world applications: higher predictive accuracy, incorporation of previously untapped data (from textual news to satellite imagery), and faster processing enabling real-time updates. At the same time, we have discussed the importance of remaining cognizant of limitations like data quality issues, model transparency, and the need for expert oversight. An intelligent system augments human expertise; it does not eliminate uncertainty or the value of human intuition, especially in economics where structural changes and one-off events can always upend model assumptions.

Nonetheless, the trajectory of progress is clear – as data grow and algorithms improve, intelligent analytical systems will play an ever larger role in economic forecasting and planning. They hold the potential to transform how policy institutions, businesses, and even supranational bodies (like the IMF or World Bank) anticipate and respond to economic developments. The system we have outlined could be viewed as a template for future forecasting platforms, combining the predictive prowess of AI with the contextual knowledge of economics. In practice, implementing such systems will require

interdisciplinary collaboration, rigorous validation, and a commitment to updating tools as new methodologies emerge.

In conclusion, intelligent analytical forecasting systems represent both a culmination of decades of methodological advancements and a new beginning in our approach to understanding the future economy. By intelligently analyzing past and present data, these systems give us a sharper lens on what tomorrow might hold. The result is better-informed strategies and policies that can navigate uncertainties and foster economic resilience on a global scale. Through continued research and refinement, the gap between economic surprises and expectations can be narrowed, delivering tangible benefits for societies worldwide in the form of more proactive and effective economic decision-making. The promise of intelligent analytics in economic forecasting is therefore not just technical – it is fundamentally about empowering human decision-makers with superior knowledge, enabling them to lead with foresight in an unpredictable world.

References

Bloomberg Professional Services. (2024). *Global insight: AI's three revolutions for macro forecasting.* https://www.bloomberg.com/professional/insights/artificial-intelligence/global-insight-ais-three-revolutions-for-macro-forecasting/

Celik, K., & Co-authors. (2024). *Macroeconomic forecasting and machine learning.* arXiv. https://arxiv.org/html/2510.11008v1

Cook, D., Smalter Hall, A., & Hall, J. (2017). *Macroeconomic indicator forecasting with deep neural networks* (Research Working Paper No. 17-11). Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City. https://www.kansascityfed.org/documents/4065/rwp17-11cooksmalterhall.pdf

Gangwar, M. (2024). Harnessing Intelligent Computing for Economic Forecasting: Development, Implementation, and Analysis of Advanced Prediction.

International Finance Corporation. (2023). *Navigating a challenging and uncertain global economic climate.* https://www.ifc.org/en/events/2023/navigating-a-challenging-and-uncertain-global-economic-climate

Investopedia. (n.d.). *Economic forecasting explained: Key indicators and practical examples.* https://www.investopedia.com/terms/e/economic-forecasting.asp

Kasabov, N., Erzegovesi, L., Fedrizzi, M., Beber, A., & Deng, D. (2016). Hybrid intelligent decision support systems and applications for risk analysis and discovery of evolving economic clusters in Europe. In *Future Directions for Intelligent Systems and Information Sciences: The Future of Speech and Image Technologies, Brain Computers, WWW, and Bioinformatics* (pp. 347-372). Heidelberg: Physica-Verlag HD.

Kitova, O. V., Kolmakov, I. B., Dyakonova, L. P., Grishina, O. A., Danko, T. P., & Sekerin, V. D. (2016). Hybrid intelligent system of forecasting of the socio-economic development of the country. *International Journal of Applied Business and Economic Research*, *14*(9), 5755-5766.

Lv, J., Li, B., Zhang, Y., & Chen, Z. (2025). Intelligent decision support systems in information management. *Applied Mathematics & Nonlinear Sciences.* https://amns.sciendo.com/es/article/10.2478/amns-2025-0221

Mahdi, Q. A., Shyshatskyi, A., Prokopenko, Y., Ivakhnenko, T., Kupriyenko, D., Golian, V., ... & Momit, A. (2021). Development of estimation and forecasting method in intelligent decision support systems.

Prusova, A., Ivanov, D., & Smirnov, P. (2025). Intelligent analytics and economic forecasting in digital environments. In *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Artificial Intelligence Applications* (Vol. 3970, Paper 17). CEUR-WS. https://ceur-ws.org/Vol-3970/PAPER17.pdf

Wong, J., Li, H., & Lai, J. (2008). Evaluating the system intelligence of the intelligent building systems: Part 1: Development of key intelligent indicators and conceptual analytical framework. *Automation in construction*, *17*(3), 284-302.

Zhang, W., Liu, H., & Zhao, T. (2025). Research on intelligent decision support platform for tourism enterprises based on multi-source heterogeneous data fusion. *Scientific Reports, 15*, Article 23486. https://www.nature.com/articles/s41598-025-23486-x

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Stages of Planning and Forecasting in the Management System

[1] Narmin Mirzazada

Accepted: 12.01.2025
Published: 12.09.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110012

Abstract; One of the main issues is to assess the need for changes in the existing economic mechanism or its individual elements (taking into account the new needs, motivations and reactions of economic entities to these changes) in order to ensure the maximum efficiency of economic development and management of the country. Then this process moves from the stage of assumptions to the stage of forecasting possible development and achieving the established development guidelines, provided that the appropriate resources and means of implementation are provided. At this stage, various scenarios are considered, the choice of a more realistic scenario can be considered a transition to the next stage of final specification of goals and parameters, the choice of a strategy reflected in the developed concepts, programs and development plans.

At the same time, the creation of new mechanisms and tools for the implementation of the chosen strategy (or the modification of existing ones) is envisaged. Then, in the context of managing the macro level of the economic system, the process enters the implementation stage, which begins with changes in the regulatory and legislative framework, the creation of new motivational incentives for subjects, after which current planning comes into force as a regulatory, coordinating and control tool.

Individual enterprises, organizations, firms representing the micro level are in the sphere of regulatory influence of state bodies. The main development parameters, operating within the macro area specified in the macro-foresight process, try to adapt to the emerging economic environment and use it to implement changes in its conditions.

Keywords: *organization, process, forecast, motivation, planning*

Introduction

Analyzing and monitoring information about the expected directions of the country's development, the situation in world markets, economic entities, along with making assumptions about possible changes in the external sphere, predict the options for their own behavior in the future. With the determination of development directions and mechanisms for implementing strategies (developed at the macro level), an appropriate response from the business sector of the economy arises (Isakov 2010).

[1] Mirzazadeh, N. Lecturer, Department of Agribusiness, Management and Marketing, Azerbaijan State Agrarian University, Azerbaijan. Email: narminmirzazada@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-5060-0125

At the level of economic entities, specific development strategies are described in detail in a certain direction: unproductive activities are limited or narrowed, promising areas are expanded, new types and forms of economic activity are created, the behavioral tactics of economic entities change. Here, at the stage of implementing the selected strategy, current (operational) planning becomes the main function of internal management (Ismayilov 2019).

Thus, the interaction of macro and micro systems of foresight is manifested, first of all, in the guiding influence of the first (through the scientific determination of the goals of future development, the development of mechanisms ensuring their achievement), the first. In addition, the purposeful and rational motivation of the activities of economic entities, their vision of their own development paths cannot go beyond the framework of the national foresight system. Taking into account the interests of economic entities in the conditions of market relations is one of the fundamental provisions of the macro-foresight system (Mirzazadeh 2025).

The reliability of target parameters in macro and micro systems of the forecast is an indispensable condition for obtaining a positive result in the development process. It is determined by the accuracy of the initial calculations carried out at various stages of forecasting and planning, ensuring the balance of natural-material and financial-value flows, the interaction of production factors, resources spent and expected results. In such calculations, indicators are used and determined that reflect a complex and interconnected set of norms and standards. They become the main regulators of both the forecasting system and the entire development management system, since they are called upon to regulate economic processes, to subordinate them to scientifically based laws (Zubareva, Pilipenko, 2016).

In general, given the insignificant difference between these categories, one can agree with this argument. Without paying attention to the nuances that are insignificant in a meaningful analysis of these concepts, we note that both of them constitute the essence of the normative method - from the nature of their impact (directive or indicative) on the economic system (Shchevyev, Bykov, Zyablitseva 2020).

With directive planning, norms and standards set from above played the role of the most important regulator of the economy. The dominance of directives in society led to the fact that they began to have a legal and economic character, since they were elevated to the rank of law and provided for liability for non-fulfillment. Although in modern conditions there are a number of economic norms, non-compliance with them threatens with serious consequences for subjects (environmental standards, standards in force in the use of budget funds, tax rules, etc.). However, researchers state that with the expansion of the independence of the rights of commodity producers during the transition to the market, directive planning is being replaced by the "concept of metrological regulation". The complexity, diversity and unity of the process of repeated production necessitated the systematization of economic norms and standards, which, in turn, perform the function of regulating these processes. Norms and standards are combined into subsystems and complexes serving technical, technological, organizational, social and other areas of the reproduction process, are formed on the basis of the existing relationship between them and are used at various levels of

management, as well as constitute their basis. Thus, the activities of individual spheres or subsystems of the economy are based on the use of the corresponding system of norms and standards (Vodyasov, 2016).

Methodology

There are a number of approaches to the classification of the entire variety of economic norms and rules. One approach involves the construction of a classification system based on interrelated features. It begins with the main feature, which expresses the belonging of norms and standards to the main relations arising in the sphere of production. The norms and standards grouped on this basis are systematized according to the following (in order of importance) attribute - belonging to the objective laws and regularities that determine these relations, then follows the feature of belonging of norms and standards to the sphere.

From the point of view of production management and its environment, the groups are divided into subgroups, and such a classification system is closed by the feature of belonging of norms and standards to specific tasks of production management and its environment: planning, accounting, control, analysis, evaluation, decision-making. Such a systematization characterizes norms and standards as belonging to the relationship - to the whole and to the relationship and interaction. However, it is impossible to build on other features that are not essentially important for determining the systemic nature of norms. For example, classification of norms and norms by types, principles and methods of formation, etc (Dewanta, Sidiq, 2023).

Within the framework of another approach, the classification allows taking into account various features of norms and standards, where the construction of features does not correspond to any pattern, but is simply listed in an arbitrary order. For example, by adding a number of other features to the classification of norms and standards of intra-farm planning and organization of agricultural production, a new one can be obtained, covering most of these norms and standards. In addition, it provides the breadth of search in organizational and methodological work when creating autonomous reproduction systems in accordance with real conditions for solving specific problems. This is especially important in the transition period, when the center of gravity in the macroeconomic management process shifts from tools to the object of management (Mirzazada, 2025).

It is clear that the same indicators included in a certain classification group are simultaneously taken into account in another group of norms and standards. The connection and interaction between them are accepted as an objective fact (without regularizing and systematizing these relations). For example, norms and standards classified by the object of regulation, indicators of labor instruments, labor objects, living labor are also included in one of the groups classified by the direction of movement of resources (consumption norms) and belong to one of its subsystems - production consumption norms. Some norms from the group of exchange indicators (some types of prices, tariffs), as well as from the group of distribution norms (taxes, norms of formation of various funds, etc.) belong to the group of general economic norms. Indicators from the group of prospective ones, by definition, belong to the groups of forecast and planned norms and standards (they can be in both at the same time), while current and operational indicators belong to the group of actual indicators - differing in

their validity or scope, in terms of objects of normalization, in terms of methods of formation, in terms of detail, etc (Ekimova, 2013).

A regulatory system or a system of norms and standards is understood as a set of scientifically substantiated material, labor and financial norms and standards, their formation, updating and development of forecast and planning documents. A normative base is understood as a set of norms and standards used for planning, forecasting, analysis and accounting, regulation, organization and control of production, distribution and exchange, as well as methodological provisions and recommendations, updating and application, programs for automated calculation of various instructions, standards, coefficients, normative indicators.

Thus, it is clear that the normative base is part of a regulatory system that, in addition to the normative base as an information element, includes a number of other organizational and management elements. This also emphasizes the definition of the concepts of a normative system and a normative economy by some researchers. They distinguish three elements of a normative economy: a normative-legal basis, a material and technical basis of the norm, and a subsystem for managing the development process of improving the normative and material and technical bases of the norm (Amrahov, Mahmudov, Aliyev, Hajiyeva 2022).

Results

The use of the term normative economy is justified by the fact that it would be incorrect to use the concept of a normative system for local studies of a set of norms and standards serving a specific area, sector of the economy. Therefore, the use of the concept of normative economy allows us to specify the object of research. Consequently, the normative system defines a broad concept of information and organizational and management (including material and technical) elements of the complex of norms and standards, while normative economy is more limited.

The main principles of the formation of the regulatory and legal framework are the principles of progressivity of norms and standards, their comparability, complexity and compliance with the conditions of the existing economic system. The principle of progressivity means taking into account the requirements of scientific and technical progress, using its achievements in the process of developing norms and standards. That is, improving regulatory systems from these positions allows us to achieve maximum results in the rational use of resources, increase the efficiency of public production. Comparability is also the most important condition for achieving goals and standardization. Without comparing normative indicators, finding the optimal ratios between production factors, comparing costs and production results, and conducting economic analysis in dynamics becomes more complex.

The principle of complexity is that the regulatory legal framework used in managing the economy should take into account the requirements of all its areas. The principle of compliance with the conditions of the existing economic system means that regulatory systems are not stationary, but well-established. Changes in the country's economy directly and indirectly affect the regulatory legal

framework, its content, and development (Ariabod, Moghaddasi, Zeraatkish, Mohammadi Nejad, 2019).

A number of regulatory indicators are automatically removed from newly created regulatory systems, since they are no longer needed. The nature of regulation is changing, its subjects, objects, goals and objectives, a regulatory economy is taking place, which allows norms and standards to maintain the function of a management tool at all stages of the development of the economic system. For example, during the transition period of the economy, the nature of regulation changed from decentralized to metrological. The enterprise determines its own regulatory legal framework, which is aimed at internal coordination and simplification of the activities of the economic entity, covering the objects of interest to it. A number of public state norms and standards are of a regulatory nature (Uskova, Selimenkov, Anishchenko, Chekavinsky, 2014).

The modern regulatory framework of any economic entity consists of external and internal standards. External, in turn, is divided into mandatory and advisory (informative). Mandatory norms are related to the protection of the interests of the entire society, and therefore their formation and maintenance are within the competence of the state. The purpose of mandatory regulation is to ensure the fulfillment of the most priority social tasks: safety of human life, labor protection, environmental protection, saving all types of resources, safety of economic facilities in connection with the possibility of emergency situations, etc. This includes various state standards for products, works, services, economic standards, minimum wages, rates of allocation to extra-budgetary funds, etc.

Recommended norms and standards are only of a guiding nature, their task is to inform economic entities about the situation in the national economy or the world economy, possible and desirable changes. They are developed by the following institutions (Amrakhov, 2022):

1. International organizations (these are various types of international standards, development indicators, etc.). For example, the International Organization for Standardization, the United Nations Economic Commission for Europe, the World Health Organization, the World Trade Organization, and others.

2. Government bodies (state recommended standards, current and projected indicators of socio-economic development, etc.).

3. Non-governmental organizations. For example, standards developed by technical and technological scientific and technical societies, experimental laboratories. The group of internal standards is formed within the framework of external mandatory standards and should not contradict them. This is the most active part of the regulatory system, which directly performs the function of production management. The enterprise itself develops technological norms of the production process, regulates the requirements for purchased raw materials, determines the volume of the consumption fund, the accumulation fund, etc.

According to researchers, the ratio of external mandatory and internal norms and standards in the total set characterizes the management of the economy. In market conditions, the scope of mandatory norms is limited to the limits that confirm the principle of freedom of management and

entrepreneurship. However, the right to independence of enterprises does not mean permissiveness in decisions, but is conditioned by the need to study and adopt common "rules" for all, aimed at achieving maximum efficiency of the interaction of all its participants. The mandatory implementation of norms is based not on blind compulsion for their implementation, but on equal relations with the state, the result of which is the mutual obligations of the state to business entities. The dynamics of the regulatory system, in terms of the ratio of obligations and independence, most clearly reflects the development of its component - the standardization system. Standardization in the form in which it existed in the planned economy did not correspond to the new economic conditions and did not allow the country to fully integrate into the world economic space. The objective need for changes in the field of standardization led to the creation of laws and regulations that included a number of fundamentally new provisions (including the division of state standards into mandatory and regulatory), new categories and terms.

The forms of application of international and regional standards have been formulated in a new way. The harmonization of local standardization rules with international standards has opened up wide opportunities for the active activity of manufacturers in world markets. With the increase in the degree of participation of the country in the international division of labor, the intensification of foreign trade activities of its subjects, a number of international standards of an advisory nature are moving to the category of mandatory ones, therefore their coordination is extremely important (Yermekova, Romanenko, Zhanibekova, Aitzhanova, Apakhayev, 2024).

One of the important issues is the harmonization of changes in the standards system with the world standardization experience. The new standardization system allows enterprises, organizations, consumers, public organizations to participate in the process of creating standards as interested parties and interact with it. For example, standards of scientific-type public associations are an important source of scientific knowledge, an important source of information about advanced achievements, and can be used on a voluntary basis to develop enterprise standards (Amrakhov, Karimov, Karimova 2022).

In general, the development of standardization and norms in general should correspond to the changes taking place in the socio-economic life of society, and also try to foresee them, so that norms, rules, standards are in a state. This allows them to fully, valuablely serve reproductive processes to promote sustainable economic growth.

Such a state is achieved through continuous monitoring of the state of regulatory and legal bases, coordination of research work on the development and updating of methodological materials, and the development of software for the modernization of the material and technical base of regulation (Amrahov, Narimanov, Hajiyeva, Mirzazadeh, Ismayilova, Osmanova, 2025).

These forms of management of the regulatory system are directly related to the management systems of reproductive processes of the corresponding levels, and are also their components. This applies more to forecasting and planning. Researchers emphasize that the role of norms and standards in any type of human activity in managing the economy does not decrease.

Thus, the above becomes part of the foresight system. It can be interpreted as a check of the readiness of the regulatory framework for changes in the external environment and involves the approval of the existing set of norms and standards in forecasting-planning models and development scenarios. In the economic literature, there is a concept of verification that can determine this approval process. Here we are talking about the verification of the model itself. The main thing is that it is appropriate to use the concept of partial verification of norms and standards in predictive development models to indicate the verification of the adequacy of the regulatory framework, which is to assess its functional completeness. Its essence lies in the fact that in the foresight system, along with the main processes of formulating hypotheses, building predictive models and drawing up plans, another process takes place - the compliance of the original, existing regulatory framework with the possible state of affairs. At the same time, in order to ensure sufficient completeness of the regulatory and legal framework, a mandatory condition must be met for the requirements to be taken into account in the norms and standards of all areas of economic management.

Discussion

The processes of forming regulatory frameworks to serve the economy occur by selecting the most acceptable norms and standards from the existing set and covering them with new normative indicators (including borrowing from other normative bases or calculations). In forecasting, this is called normative forecasting. In fact, this is a target forecast. Here, normative indicators reflecting the desired state of the object in the future are determined to achieve the set goals, and the list of norms and standards (including resource use norms) whose implementation is determined as a way is specified. However, it should be taken into account that specifying the degree of probability of obtaining certain results is also a normative process (for example, threshold values of probability can be determined, etc.). Unlike forecasting, where norms and standards are applied only in individual cases, planning, regardless of their type and form, involves the comprehensive use of normative systems. They are checked for compliance with specific development directions of economic systems. This is due to the specific nature of planning, the greater specificity of the goals set, the implementation of certain control functions through planning when comparing actual and planned indicators. Thus, production standards at the enterprise are used as a calculation basis for planning production, its organization, based on technical and economic standards, the basis for accounting and control over the use of resources, the future need for equipment, materials, tools is determined. Labor standards allow you to plan the size of the wage fund, rational reserves of production resources are also planned according to the standards (Gazizov, 2014).

At each stage of planning, the quality of the norms is carefully analyzed. Outdated norms are replaced by new ones. Internal planning takes into account both internal and external regulatory standards. The latter cannot change under the influence of internal management, they are only indicators of the external environment that are most sensitive to changes. Monitoring the state of the enterprise, they determine the tactics and strategy of its behavior and development (Omoshev, Zhoroeva, Abyshov, Kaparova, Mamyrkulova, 2024).

Macroeconomic planning operates with external norms and rules. Some of them serve as benchmarks, while others act as methods and ways to achieve development benchmarks (taxes, price ceilings, tariffs and depreciation norms, norms for the formation of various funds, state standards, etc.).

Thus, there are permissible limit values for development indicators approved on the basis of the system of international indicators adopted by the UN, and the main indicators include (Mirzazada, Camalov, 2025):

1. Expenditures on scientific research, % of GDP.

2. Average hourly wage.

3. Ratio of income of 10% of the population with high wages to 10% of the population with low wages.

4. Differentiation of the population by the subsistence minimum.

5. Share of the processing industry in industrial production, %.

6. Volume of investments, % of GDP.

7. Share of imports in food consumption.

Taking into account the traditional logic of planning, two approaches should be distinguished. between which there are not only significant differences, but also certain commonalities. The commonality of these approaches includes the main purpose of the qualitative characteristics in their specific relationship. Unlike these characteristics, many other indicators are either constant or are determined on the basis of slight growth and structural transformation (Vartanova, 2016).

A certain dynamism of such economic indicators, direct calculations to justify the volume of production and sales of products do not allow them to be considered limiting in a complex system of planning. Therefore, the characteristics of factors that have a special status in the planning system have been and remain. These processes include several stages.

At the first stage, calculations are carried out on the basis of appropriate methods and information technologies. At the second stage, the characteristics of the unit cost of a specific type of product are justified in an automated mode. For this, the corresponding cost standards are determined: conditionally constant, not related to production volumes and calculated absolutely; as well as conditional variables per unit of a specific product. Taking into account them and the total savings, direct calculations determine the necessary costs for the planned production (Mirzazadeh, Zeynalli, 2024).

At the third stage, a quantitative forecast is carried out, taking into account the expected sales volumes, market conditions and contracts, in accordance with a certain methodology. These calculations allow determining the amount of expected income from the sale of products (Amrahov, 2014).

The essence of the fourth stage consists in the consolidated direct calculations (based on information technologies) of the economic results of production, including gross and marginal revenue, profit.

Their relationship with resources and production costs determines the break-even points and economic safety zones for the production of a particular product, various characteristics of economic efficiency, private (labor productivity, etc.). At the fifth stage, the needs for planned resources within the framework of classical intra-enterprise planning can be specified, and organizational and economic management tools within the framework of an indicative approach.

In the new economic conditions, only the nature of planning should change, it should be improved taking into account new opportunities and needs arising in the economic system. First of all, this process is associated with a change in the role of the state in the economy, an increase in its active influence on the basis of the expansion of regulatory instruments that are no longer strictly directive in nature, but rather directional, indirect in nature, which is more effective as an integral part of the complexity of relations between economic entities (Amrahov, Mirzazadeh, Taghiyev, Muradov, Hamidov, Karimova, 2023).

However, there are still individual sectors and areas where directive planning is an objective necessity (including in the sphere of spending budget funds). In fact, even within a separate enterprise, a number of planned indicators can be directive in nature. Therefore, when forming strategic plans for the development of micro- or macroeconomic systems, it is necessary, first of all, to determine the characteristics of the areas, certain structural elements, forms and methods of appropriate approaches, planning (Amrahov, Huseinov 2015).

The modern concept of strategic planning involves the creation of a certain logical chain in a single model of a strategic plan. Its structural elements are as follows:

- determination and formation of the goal or system of goals of the strategic planning subject in the planning period;

- analysis and clarification of the initial level of development of the strategic planning object in the pre-planning period, the parameters of the achieved level and its structure at the beginning of this period;

- determination of the volume and structure of the needs of society in the planning period;

- determination of the volume and structure of resources existing at the beginning of the planning period and newly created during the planning period;

- balancing the needs and resources of socio-economic subsystems of different levels by eliminating temporary contradictions and inconsistencies, on the basis of the preparation of management decisions in the form of strategic forecasts, programs and plans.

This arrangement of the links of the logical chain is not entirely correct. The point is that if you follow the logic of an integral strategic management system, which is projected into its individual components, including planning, then the starting point here is the analysis of the external and internal environment, and only then the mission, goals of the organization are determined and other structural elements are implemented.

The importance of the analysis is due to the fact that it provides clarity of information, signals changes in the parameters of the internal and external environment, which, of course, is of great importance not only at the beginning of the management process, but also in all its processes. Therefore, it can be said that it, as it were, permeates the entire strategic management system. Based on this, it would be fair to say that the logical chain of strategic planning is also based on the analysis of the internal and external environment, since planning is not just the determination of a set of indicators, but a complex system of preliminary measures, including a system of preliminary measures. Thus, the revised elements of the strategic planning logic represent a system of interconnected stages and actions (Amrahov, Mirzazadeh, Guliyeva, Gazanfarova, 2024):

- analysis of internal and external environmental factors in dynamics, determination of the resource and organizational potential of the planning object;

- conceptual studies with consideration of alternatives and determination of the main parameters of development;

- clarification of the goals of the system, the goals of the planning subject, taking into account the volume and structure; simultaneous balancing between socio-economic (micro and macro systems) levels, coordination of needs, resources, interests;

- search for ways and means of implementing the planned tasks;

- systematization of the targets set for the current planned indicators, justification of the mechanism for implementing the planned activities.

An integral part of the strategic planning methodology, along with its logical sequence, are principles that reflect the most important properties, regularities, directions and opportunities of the planning process. The principles of strategic planning formulated in the economic literature are distinguished as follows (Amrahov, 2015):

- the principle of science. It is based on the use of knowledge about the laws of social development, achievements of scientific and technical progress, means increasing the reliability of planned data, correct calculations;

- the principle of unity, firstly, implies the systemic nature of planning and is implemented through the coordination of elements (establishment of functional interaction of one level of management) and integration (interlevel coordination of plans), secondly, taking into account interests;

- the principle of proportionality and balance - implies issues of achieving rational relationships between resources and needs, demand and supply, equivalence of commodity exchange;

- the principle of efficiency, ensuring the achievement of the planning goal at the lowest cost and has a positive effect on its types during the implementation of the strategic plan;

- the principle of priority, requiring the separation of leading links based on the ranking of goals and objectives in order of importance;

- the principle of coordination of short-term and long-term goals and objectives - allows to achieve their consistency during the implementation of the strategic plan, and also implies the comparability of planned indicators;

- the principle of adaptation, which implies the possibility of adjusting planned indicators and maneuvers in operational planning in conditions of variability in external conditions - this means that as the processes of reproduction intensify, economic relations become more complex, it is necessary to improve planning technology, replace outdated indicators with qualitatively new ones, that is, the planning system should be in a state of consistent search.

Conclusion

In the economic literature, due to the changing nature of planning in modern conditions, it is often identified with forecasting. Indeed, these categories have many common features. For example, the main goal of both forecasting and planning is to build a model of the future state of the object. In addition, some of their principles are common (scientific, proportional, balanced, adaptive, etc.).

Continuing the comparative methodological analysis of planning and forecasting, we can also note their commonality in a number of applied methods, which are methods for developing forecast and planning documents and indicators. For example, the forecasting process may include general scientific methods (system analysis and synthesis, deduction, induction, analogies, comparisons, experiments), economic and mathematical analysis methods (correlation and regression analysis, mathematical modeling), etc. However, some of them may be acceptable in one case and unacceptable in another, taking into account the purpose, task and type of these processes. Thus, from an economic point of view, individual methods based on constructs are generally acceptable for forecasting as the first stage in a unified forecasting process, while planning is the second stage of this relationship, involving the use of methods that establish strict relationships between taxes.

The set of methods directly used in planning can also vary depending on its form, type, and purpose. In the conditions of the administrative-distributive system of the economy, methods were used that allowed for capture, based on directive central planning. It combines all processes related to the formation and distribution of resources at both the macro and micro levels into a single system. The main ones here were balance and normative methods, extrapolation and mathematical modeling methods, etc. The essence of these methods predetermined their choice (Amrahov, Rahimli, Mirzazadeh, Ibrahimli, Valizadeh, 2023).

The balance method has a universal meaning, allows you to implement the main principle of any type of planning. With the help of the balance method, the proportions of reproduction in the economy are regulated, the necessary connection is established between sources of income and directions of resource expenditure, and in general, the interaction of all stages and aspects of extensive reproduction is achieved.

The normative method allows you to determine planned indicators on a direct basis. In addition, the introduction of norms and standards replaces the determination of absolute indicators, that is, volumes. With directive planning, norms and standards have become the most important means of regulating the economy, in most cases acquiring a legal and economic nature, that is, their non-compliance threatened with serious consequences for performers. The normative method (as well as the balance method) regulates the relationship between economic indicators and processes. The extrapolation method is used when the stability of the system, the stability of events, the dynamics of processes and indicators in the future are determined by their tendencies to change in the past. It is assumed that development proceeds uninterruptedly, smoothly, the forces of the past can control the future. Indeed, in conditions of relative certainty of development, only minor adjustments are needed for deviations detected when correcting and smoothing the indicators of retrospective time series.

References

Amrahov, V.T. (2015). The institutional aspects of the formation of agricultural market. Theoretical & Applied Science. v.10. n.30. 72-74

Amrahov, V.T. (2014). Improvement of the economic mechanism of the structural policy of the state in the agricultural market. V.11. n. 10 SPEC. ISSUE. 471-476

Amrakhov, V.T. (2022). Risk Assessment In Agearian Entrepreneurship. MITTEILUNGEN KLOSTERNEUBURG. 6 (72). 99-107

Amrakhov V.T., Karimov F.J., Karimova M.H. (2022). DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNİTİES OF MATERİAL AND TECHNİCAL RESOURCE POTENTİAL İN THE AGRİCULTURAL SECTOR. European Journal of Economics and Management Sciences. 1, 62-68

Amrahov, V., Narimanov, N., Hajiyeva, S., Mirzazadeh, N., Ismayilova, T. Osmanova, G. (2025). Development of Effective Financial Strategies for Long-Term Economic Viability. International Journal of Accounting and Economics Studies. V.12. n. SI-2. 1-9

Amrahov, V., Rahimli, F., Mirzazadeh, N., Ibrahimli, G., Valizadeh, H. (2023). Satisfying the consumer demand for agricultural products: Possibilities and its prediction. Scientific Horizons, 26. 7. P. 160-170

Amrahov, V.T., Mirzazadeh, N.G., Guliyeva, K.N, Gazanfarova, J.V. (2024). Economic Effectiveness and Forecasting of Scientific Activity in Azerbaijan. International Journal of Religion 5 (7), 422–430

Amrahov, V.T., Mirzazadeh, N.G., Taghiyev, M.Z., Muradov, R.J., Hamidov, A.V., Karimova, M.H. (2023). Modeling and forecasting of production an agricultural. Journal of law and sustainable development v.11, n.7.

Amrahov V., Mahmudov E., Aliyev S., Hajiyeva S. (2022). Econometric analysis and assessment of factors affecting the efficiency of agricultural production.Scientific Papers Series

Management, Economic Engineering in Agriculture and Rural Development Vol. 22, Issue 3. 23-34

Amrahov V.T., Huseinov M.J. (2015). About the production diversification issues in agriculture. ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science. V.4 n.24. 174-176

Ariabod, A., Moghaddasi, R., Zeraatkish, Y., & Mohammadi Nejad, A. (2019). Governance and agricultural growth: Evidence from selected developing countries. Economic Journal of Emerging Markets, 11(1), 73–80.

Dewanta, A. S., & Sidiq, S. (2023). Intensity of the creative economy agency and partnership in empowering micro and small enterprises. Economic Journal of Emerging Markets, 15(1), 56–71.

Ekimova, K. V. (2013). Finance of organizations (enterprises). Moscow: INFRA-M.

Isakov, D. A. (2010). Risk management for the development of municipal economic systems. Moscow: MAKS Press.

Ismayilov, Kh. N. (2019). The impact of structural changes in agriculture on risk reduction. Economics and Entrepreneurship, (1), 456–459

Gazizov, R. M. (2014). Foreign experience in the development of rural areas. Young Scientist, 2, 416–418.

Mirzazada, N. (2025). The State of Organization of the Management System and its Characteristics. Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities. 2 (4). 107-113

Mirzazadeh, N., Zeynalli, M. (2024). Improvement of information provision of small business in the agricultural sphere. Journal of Economics. Volume:1, issue:1. P. 23-27

Mirzazada, N., Camalov, T. (2025). Mechanizm for Regulating Business Relations. Porta Universorum. Vol. 1 No. 8, P. 26-36

Mirzazadeh, N. (2025). Scientific and theoretical foundations of the formation and development of management strategy in business entities. Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities. 2 (5). 7-15

Omoshev, T., Zhoroeva, A., Abyshov, I., Kaparova, G., & Mamyrkulova, D. (2024). Green technologies of the agroindustrial complex as the main element of increasing the competitive innovative development of Central Asia. Scientific Horizons, 27(12), 103–115.

Shchevyev, A. N., Bykov, A. A., & Zyablitseva, I. V. (2020). Principles, strategic trends and mechanisms of food security in development areas, the North and the Arctic of Siberia. Economic Review, 1(3), 15–20

Uskova, T. V., Selimenkov, R. Yu., Anishchenko, A. N., Chekavinsky, A. N. (2014). Food security of the region: Monograph. Vologda: ISEDT RAS.

Vartanova, M. L. (2016). Main directions of ensuring food security in the Russian Federation. Regional Problems of Economic Transformation, 5(67), 29–39.

Vodyasov, P. V. (2016). Assessing the physical availability of food for the population of the region (using the example of the Altai Territory). Economics and Entrepreneurship, 4-2(69-2), 227–230.

Yermekova, Zh., Romanenko, S., Zhanibekova, G., Aitzhanova, B., & Apakhayev, N. (2024). Integration of digital technologies to improve the efficiency of small and medium-sized agricultural enterprises. Scientific Horizons, 27(12), 142–152.

Zubareva, Yu. V., Pilipenko, L. M. (2016). Problems of running agribusiness and directions for their solution. Fundamental Research, 12-4, 858–862.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Application of Information Technologies in the Control of Technical Systems

[1] Cebrayil Huseynov

Accepted: 12.05.2025
Published: 12.09.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110013

Abstract; The integration of modern information technologies into technical control systems is fundamentally transforming industrial automation and infrastructure management. This article provides a theoretical and global examination of how IoT connectivity, cloud–edge computing, artificial intelligence, and digital twin technologies are reshaping control architectures and operational practices. Traditional isolated SCADA environments are evolving into interconnected, data-centric ecosystems capable of real-time monitoring, predictive analytics, and adaptive decision-making. The analysis highlights the substantial benefits of this transition—enhanced automation responsiveness, improved situational awareness, reduced downtime, and significant gains in energy and resource efficiency. At the same time, the study identifies critical challenges, including cybersecurity vulnerabilities, interoperability complexities, and growing system heterogeneity requiring advanced skills and robust governance. Emerging trends such as AI-driven autonomy, 5G/6G-enabled connectivity, digital twin ecosystems, and Industry 5.0 human-centric principles suggest a future of increasingly intelligent, sustainable, and resilient control systems. The findings underscore that successful adoption depends on coordinated technological innovation, strong cybersecurity practices, and cross-disciplinary workforce development.

Keywords: *Intelligent control systems, Industrial IoT, Digital twins, Cyber-physical automation*

Introduction

The integration of modern information technologies into technical control systems is reshaping industrial automation and smart infrastructure worldwide. With the rise of Industry 4.0, formerly isolated operational technology (OT) systems are increasingly merging with information technology (IT), enabling real-time data exchange, remote supervision, and global automation (Frank et al., 2019; Lu, 2017). Cyber-physical systems, IoT connectivity, and advanced networking now allow factories, utilities, and transportation systems to operate as interconnected, data-driven ecosystems rather than siloed units (Lee et al., 2015). This shift transforms monitoring and control from manual, local operations to integrated digital environments supported by analytics and automation (Farooq et al., 2023; Venanzi et al., 2025).

[1] Huseynov, C. Master's Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Specialty: Application of Information Technologies in the Management of Technical Objects. Email: cbrayilhuseynov83@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0009-8630-960X

This article provides a concise theoretical overview of major IT innovations applied to technical control systems, highlighting global developments in IoT, SCADA modernization, cloud-edge architectures, AI-enhanced automation, and digital twins. Benefits such as improved efficiency, real-time visibility, and predictive capability are discussed alongside challenges including cybersecurity, interoperability, and system complexity (Wali & Alshehry, 2024; Enemosah & Ifeanyi, 2024). The review positions these technologies within the broader evolution from closed control networks toward open, intelligent industrial ecosystems.

Theoretical Background: From Traditional Control to Industry 4.0

Technical control systems—traditionally implemented using SCADA, DCS, and PLC-based architectures—were historically isolated, proprietary, and optimized for reliability rather than connectivity (Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024). Classical SCADA models involved field sensors and actuators communicating only with onsite supervisory servers, limiting interoperability and external data exchange (Enemosah & Ifeanyi, 2024).

Industry 4.0 has accelerated IT/OT convergence, enabling industrial equipment to communicate through IIoT devices, cloud services, and cyber-physical systems (Kagermann et al., 2013; Farooq et al., 2023). IoT integration allows remote monitoring, fine-grained telemetry, and cross-site visibility (Chang et al., 2021). CPS technology further links digital computation with physical processes, allowing software to directly sense and control machinery in real time (Lee et al., 2015).

Modern architectures increasingly adopt open communication standards such as OPC UA to overcome vendor lock-in and facilitate interoperability across industrial networks (Venanzi et al., 2025). As systems become interconnected, they support enterprise-level analytics, machine learning–based optimization, and predictive maintenance—but also inherit greater cybersecurity exposure (Wali & Alshehry, 2024; Moxa, 2021).

Overall, the transition from isolated SCADA systems to integrated Industry 4.0 platforms establishes the technological foundation for advanced control, automation, and global system intelligence that define modern technical environments.

Cloud Computing and Industrial Automation

Cloud computing has become a central pillar of digital transformation in industrial automation, offering scalable storage, high-capacity processing, and remote accessibility for technical control systems. As IIoT deployments generate massive data streams, cloud platforms provide elastic resources that support sensor data archiving, supervisory analytics, and AI-driven optimization without the need for extensive on-premise infrastructure (Chang et al., 2021; Simio, 2025). Centralizing data in cloud environments also enables organizations to monitor distributed operations from a unified interface, compare performance across sites, and coordinate predictive maintenance strategies globally (InHand Networks, 2025; Venanzi et al., 2025).

Cloud adoption introduces modern software paradigms—service-oriented architectures, APIs, virtualization, and containerization—into traditionally static OT domains (Ness, 2025; Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024). These trends support emerging models such as SCADA-as-a-Service and virtualized control components. However, they also raise challenges. Industrial operators must manage latency

constraints, ensure continuous local control through hybrid cloud-edge architectures, and address cybersecurity risks inherent in multi-tenant cloud environments (Wali & Alshehry, 2024; Moxa, 2021). Private clouds, VPNs, and encryption are often used to secure critical data.

Despite concerns, cloud computing significantly enhances operational intelligence. Cloud-based analytics reduce downtime, improve production efficiency, and enable enterprise-wide optimization—demonstrating why cloud integration is increasingly essential in modern control ecosystems (Frank et al., 2019; Farooq et al., 2023).

Edge and Fog Computing for Real-Time Control

While cloud systems provide global visibility, edge computing addresses the need for low-latency, real-time control by processing data near its source. In industrial environments, edge devices (smart PLCs, gateways, or embedded controllers) execute control logic locally, ensuring millisecond-level responses and safe operation even when remote connectivity is limited (Ness, 2025; Enemosah & Ifeanyi, 2024). Fog computing extends this concept by creating intermediate processing layers between the edge and cloud, distributing computation across the network continuum.

Edge intelligence is particularly valuable for safety-critical applications such as anomaly detection or equipment protection. Models trained in the cloud can be deployed on edge hardware to autonomously identify faults and initiate immediate corrective actions, reducing reliance on high-bandwidth or high-latency cloud communication (Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024; Chang et al., 2021). This approach also minimizes network load by transmitting only aggregated or event-based data upstream.

Edge and fog architectures improve cybersecurity by keeping sensitive operational data on-site and ensuring continued local control if cloud links fail (Wali & Alshehry, 2024). They also lower operating costs by filtering data before transmission and reducing downtime through faster local decision-making. Industry analyses consistently emphasize that modern control systems succeed by combining cloud-level analytics with edge-level autonomy, rather than favoring one architecture exclusively (Farooq et al., 2023; Venanzi et al., 2025).

In summary, edge and fog computing extend the capabilities of cloud systems, enabling responsive, resilient, and scalable industrial control. Together, they form the backbone of next-generation intelligent automation.

Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning in Control Systems

Artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML) are reshaping industrial control by enabling systems to learn, optimize, and adapt rather than simply execute fixed logic. Their adoption—often described as Industrial AI—supports predictive analytics, anomaly detection, real-time optimization, and intelligent decision support across manufacturing, utilities, and critical infrastructure (Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024; Farooq et al., 2023).

A major industrial application is **predictive maintenance**. ML models trained on historical vibration, temperature, or power signatures can detect early indicators of equipment degradation. When incorporated into SCADA or IIoT architectures, these models generate proactive alerts and reduce unplanned downtime (Simio, 2025; Frank et al., 2019). AI-enabled anomaly detection similarly

improves product quality and operational reliability by identifying abnormal behavior faster and more accurately than human operators.

AI is also emerging in **real-time control**. Reinforcement learning and neural network–based controllers can optimize energy usage, tune nonlinear processes, and respond dynamically to changing conditions. These methods outperform fixed control logic in complex environments and can coordinate multiple control loops simultaneously (Chang et al., 2021; Enemosah & Ifeanyi, 2024).

Another impactful area is **decision support**. Modern SCADA/HMI systems increasingly integrate AI analytics to forecast trends, highlight risks, and recommend corrective actions. For example, AI can predict overload conditions in power grids or forecast quality deviations on production lines, helping operators act before issues escalate (Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024).

However, the use of AI introduces challenges: industrial datasets are often noisy and incomplete, and deploying sophisticated models on edge devices requires compute-efficient algorithms (Moxa, 2021). Ensuring trustworthy, interpretable AI output is essential, especially in safety-critical domains.

Despite these hurdles, evidence consistently shows that AI improves efficiency, reduces downtime, and enhances operational sustainability across technical systems worldwide (Farooq et al., 2023; Simio, 2025).

Digital Twins and Simulation in Control

Digital twins—virtual replicas of physical assets or processes—have become foundational tools in advanced control architectures. By synchronizing real-time IoT data with simulation models, digital twins enable continuous monitoring, predictive analytics, and scenario-based optimization (Mendonça et al., 2022; Simio, 2025).

A digital twin provides a safe environment for **what-if simulations**, allowing engineers to test process changes, validate control logic, or optimize production parameters without disrupting physical operations. This accelerates commissioning, reduces risk, and supports data-driven decision-making across the system lifecycle (Lee et al., 2015; Lu, 2017). Many companies report significant reductions in operational costs and time-to-market when digital twins are integrated into their automation ecosystems.

Digital twins also enhance **predictive maintenance and anomaly detection** by comparing real system behavior with simulated expectations. Deviations—such as rising energy consumption or abnormal thermal patterns—signal emerging faults earlier than traditional monitoring methods (Mendonça et al., 2022).

More advanced implementations integrate AI, forming **intelligent digital twins** capable of adaptive optimization. For example, HVAC or process-control twins can automatically adjust parameters to improve efficiency, effectively closing the loop between simulation and real-world control.

Challenges remain, including model accuracy over time, high data integration demands, and cybersecurity concerns. Nevertheless, rapid technological progress—particularly in cloud computing, IIoT, and edge analytics—is driving widespread adoption. Analysts forecast that digital twins will become standard across manufacturing, energy, transportation, and infrastructure systems within this decade (InHand Networks, 2025; Venanzi et al., 2025).

In essence, digital twins extend the reach of information technologies into every stage of technical system management, enabling deeper insight, safer experimentation, and more intelligent control decisions.

Benefits for Automation, Monitoring, and Efficiency

The combined use of IoT, edge computing, cloud platforms, AI, and digital twins is significantly enhancing automation, monitoring, and operational efficiency in modern technical systems. Each technology contributes unique capabilities; together they create highly responsive, data-driven, and adaptive control environments (Chang et al., 2021; Frank et al., 2019).

Enhanced Automation and Responsiveness.

IoT sensors generate continuous, high-resolution data streams, while edge processors analyze this data immediately to support real-time control decisions. This reduces latency and eliminates dependence on centralized systems, allowing equipment to react almost instantaneously to disturbances (Ness, 2025; Moxa, 2021). AI-based controllers further improve responsiveness by learning optimal behaviors over time and adapting to changing conditions. Predictive analytics help increase throughput and reduce waste by anticipating deviations before they affect production (Simio, 2025).

Improved Monitoring and Situational Awareness.

Cloud-based integration and IoT connectivity offer operators a unified, real-time view of system performance across sites. Dashboards enriched with AI highlight anomalies, trends, or risks, improving situational awareness and speeding up decision-making (Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024). Digital twins enhance monitoring by comparing live system data with simulated expectations, enabling forward-looking assessments and earlier interventions (Mendonça et al., 2022). These capabilities have been shown to reduce defect rates and improve quality in smart manufacturing.

Efficiency and Optimization Gains.

AI-driven optimization improves energy consumption, resource efficiency, and asset utilization. Predictive maintenance ensures timely interventions, extending equipment life and reducing downtime (Farooq et al., 2023). Digital twins support scenario testing, scheduling optimization, and process tuning, often resulting in double-digit improvements in throughput or energy performance (InHand Networks, 2025). Interoperability standards such as OPC UA and MQTT further boost efficiency by reducing integration work and enabling seamless data exchange.

Overall, the integration of these technologies shifts automation from rigid programming to adaptive, self-optimizing systems. Human operators increasingly supervise and refine intelligent processes rather than manually adjusting controls, resulting in consistently improved productivity and reliability (Frank et al., 2019; Simio, 2025).

Challenges in Implementing Intelligent Control Systems

Despite substantial benefits, organizations face significant challenges when applying advanced IT in control environments—including cybersecurity risks, interoperability barriers, and increased system complexity.

Cybersecurity Vulnerabilities.

Connecting SCADA, IoT devices, and cloud systems expands the attack surface. Legacy controllers often lack encryption or authentication, and misconfigured cloud interfaces create additional risks (Wali & Alshehry, 2024). Cyber incidents have shown that attacks can propagate from IT networks into OT systems, threatening both data and physical processes. Effective security requires layered defenses, including segmentation, strong access control, encryption, and continuous monitoring following ICS security standards (Venanzi et al., 2025; Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024).

Interoperability and Integration Challenges.

Industrial environments commonly contain heterogeneous equipment from many vendors. Integrating legacy systems with modern IoT and cloud platforms often requires custom gateways, protocol translation, and reconciliation of inconsistent data models (Farooq et al., 2023). Surveys show that interoperability issues remain a primary barrier to IIoT adoption, with significant value lost when systems cannot communicate reliably (InHand Networks, 2025). While standards like OPC UA and MQTT help, not all vendors comply or update older equipment.

System Complexity and Maintainability.

Integrating IoT, AI, cloud services, and edge computing produces highly complex architectures. Troubleshooting becomes more difficult because failures may originate from sensors, networks, AI models, or edge devices. AI outputs also raise concerns in safety-critical environments due to limited interpretability (Chang et al., 2021). Maintaining these systems requires workers skilled in both IT and OT disciplines—a gap many organizations struggle to address (Frank et al., 2019).

Additional Concerns.

Data privacy, regulatory constraints, and the challenge of managing thousands of IoT devices add further burden. Critical industries must validate autonomous functions rigorously, and many maintain manual backups to preserve safety. Scaling intelligent control systems from pilot projects to enterprise-wide deployments also requires careful planning and governance (Venanzi et al., 2025).

In summary, the transition to intelligent control systems introduces substantial cybersecurity, integration, and organizational challenges. Addressing them requires coordinated IT/OT strategies, standardized interfaces, upskilling of personnel, and robust security frameworks. Organizations that navigate these challenges effectively gain significant competitive advantage, while failure to manage them can undermine the benefits of digital transformation.

Future Directions and Emerging Trends

The next decade will see intelligent control systems advance rapidly as emerging technologies mature and industrial, economic, and societal pressures intensify. Several major trends will shape future development: increased autonomy through AI, strengthened cybersecurity, ubiquitous ultra-fast connectivity, expansion of digital twin ecosystems, and alignment with sustainability and human-centric Industry 5.0 principles.

AI-Driven Autonomy and Industry 5.0

As AI and machine learning evolve, control systems will shift from predictive to cognitive and autonomous decision-making. Reinforcement learning and adaptive controllers are expected to manage complex, multi-variable industrial processes with minimal human intervention, enabling flexible manufacturing, self-optimizing plants, and near-zero-downtime operations (Frank et al., 2019). Industry 5.0 emphasizes human–machine collaboration rather than replacement, resulting in workplaces where cobots, AR/VR-enabled interfaces, and AI decision-support tools enhance operator performance and ergonomics (Kagermann et al., 2013; Chang et al., 2021). Workforce development will therefore increasingly require hybrid IT/OT/AI skill sets.

Cybersecurity and System Resilience

Growing connectivity increases exposure to cyber threats. Future architectures will integrate AI-driven intrusion detection, automated isolation mechanisms, and tamper-proof logging—potentially supported by blockchain—to secure device identity and data integrity (Wali & Alshehry, 2024). Standards such as ISA/IEC 62443 and sector-specific compliance frameworks will become central requirements for critical infrastructure (Venanzi et al., 2025). Privacy-preserving analytics (e.g., federated learning) will also gain traction, enabling cloud-scale AI without exposing sensitive operational data.

5G/6G and Ubiquitous Connectivity

5G's ultra-reliable low-latency communication (URLLC) already enables wireless real-time control, mobile robotics, and large-scale IIoT deployments. Future 6G technologies will integrate sensing and communication, allowing devices to share environmental awareness and support distributed fog computing at the network edge (InHand Networks, 2025). Satellite IoT will close remaining connectivity gaps, enabling fully connected supply chains, utilities, and remote industrial assets.

Digital Twin Ecosystems and the Industrial Metaverse

Digital twins are expected to evolve into interconnected networks representing machines, production lines, entire plants, and supply chains simultaneously (Mendonça et al., 2022). These ecosystems will feed into immersive AR/VR environments—sometimes described as the industrial metaverse—enabling remote collaboration, virtual commissioning, advanced maintenance support, and multi-site operational planning (Simio, 2025). As real-time data, simulation models, and AI intersect, digital twins will become continuous optimization engines.

Sustainability and Energy Optimization

Environmental and regulatory pressures will drive more AI-based optimization for energy efficiency and decarbonization. Intelligent control systems will integrate renewable energy variability, minimize emissions, and coordinate production schedules to align with low-carbon electricity availability (Farooq et al., 2023). Industry 5.0 principles reinforce multi-objective optimization, where sustainability metrics carry equal weight to cost or productivity.

Standardization, Convergence, and Unified Architectures

Future progress will depend on greater interoperability. Emerging reference architectures, open standards (OPC UA, MQTT, Digital Twin Definition Language), and open-source industrial

platforms will reduce vendor fragmentation and accelerate deployment (Lu, 2017; Venanzi et al., 2025). Long-term, industries may adopt unified "industrial operating systems" managing IoT, AI, digital twins, and edge–cloud orchestration cohesively.

Overall Outlook

Control systems will become increasingly autonomous, interconnected, resilient, and sustainable. In the long term, quantum optimization—currently experimental—may support complex, national-scale control problems such as grid balancing or large-scale logistics. Achieving these futures will require coordinated innovation across engineering, IT, data science, policy, and education.

Conclusion

The integration of advanced information technologies into technical control systems is reshaping industrial automation and infrastructure management globally. Industry 4.0 has accelerated the convergence of IT and OT, enabling real-time visibility, intelligent decision support, and flexible, data-driven operations across sectors (Frank et al., 2019; Lee et al., 2015). IoT provides continuous data acquisition, cloud and edge computing supply scalable processing and reliable local control, AI introduces predictive and adaptive intelligence, and digital twins offer powerful simulation and optimization capabilities (Chang et al., 2021; Mendonça et al., 2022).

These technologies collectively deliver measurable benefits: reduced downtime, improved product quality, stronger situational awareness, and significant gains in energy and resource efficiency (Farooq et al., 2023; Rustamova & Rustamov, 2024). However, they also introduce challenges—particularly cybersecurity risks, interoperability limitations, and increased architectural complexity. Addressing these issues requires robust security frameworks, adherence to interoperability standards, improved lifecycle management, and substantial workforce upskilling (Wali & Alshehry, 2024; Venanzi et al., 2025).

Looking ahead, intelligent control systems will continue evolving toward higher autonomy, deeper AI integration, pervasive connectivity, and comprehensive digital twin ecosystems. Principles of Industry 5.0—human-centricity, sustainability, and resilience—will increasingly shape system design and operation (Kagermann et al., 2013; Chang et al., 2021). Emerging technologies such as 5G/6G, immersive interfaces, and advanced simulation platforms will further blur boundaries between physical and digital environments.

Ultimately, the fusion of IT and control engineering represents a transformative shift toward smarter, more adaptive, and more sustainable industrial ecosystems. While technical and organizational challenges persist, the trajectory is clear: intelligent, interconnected control systems will become foundational to competitiveness, innovation, and infrastructure resilience in the decades ahead.

References

Chang, Z., Liu, S., Xiong, X., Cai, Z., & Tu, G. (2021). *A survey of recent advances in edge-computing-powered artificial intelligence of things*. IEEE Internet of Things Journal, 8(18), 13849–13875. DOI: 10.1109/JIOT.2021.3088875

Enemosah, A., & Ifeanyi, O. G. (2024). *SCADA in the Era of IoT: Automation, Cloud-driven security, and machine learning applications*. International Journal of Science and Research Archive, 13(1), 3417–3435. DOI: 10.30574/ijsra.2024.13.1.1975

Farooq, M. S., Abdullah, M., Riaz, S., Alvi, A., Rustam, F., López Flores, M. A., Castanedo Galán, J., Samad, M. A., & Ashraf, I. (2023). *A Survey on the Role of Industrial IoT in Manufacturing for Implementation of Smart Industry*. Sensors, 23(21), 8958. DOI: 10.3390/s23218958

Frank, A. G., Dalenogare, L. S., & Ayala, N. F. (2019). *Industry 4.0 technologies: Implementation patterns and their impact on firm performance*. International Journal of Production Economics, 210, 15–26. DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpe.2019.01.004

InHand Networks. (2025, June 13). *Top 10 Industrial IoT Trends in 2025: Empowering the Future of Smart Manufacturing*. Retrieved from InHand Networks Blogs: https://inhandgo.com/blogs/articles/top-10-industrial-iot-trends-in-2025-empowering-the-future-of-smart-manufacturing

Kagermann, H., Wahlster, W., & Helbig, J. (2013). *Recommendations for implementing the strategic initiative INDUSTRIE 4.0*. Final report of the Industrie 4.0 Working Group. acatech – National Academy of Science and Engineering, Germany.

Lee, J., Bagheri, B., & Kao, H. (2015). *A Cyber-Physical Systems architecture for Industry 4.0-based manufacturing systems*. Manufacturing Letters, 3, 18–23. DOI: 10.1016/j.mfglet.2014.12.001

Lu, Y. (2017). *Industry 4.0: A survey on technologies, applications and open research issues*. Journal of Industrial Information Integration, 6, 1–10. DOI: 10.1016/j.jii.2017.04.005

Mendonça, R. da S., de Oliveira Lins, S., de Bessa, I. V., de Carvalho Ayres Jr, F. A., de Medeiros, R. L. P., & de Lucena Jr, V. F. (2022). *Digital Twin Applications: A survey of recent advances and challenges*. Processes, 10(4), 744. DOI: 10.3390/pr10040744

Moxa. (2021). *6 Challenges for Industrial IoT* (Content published by Moxa, via Madison Technologies). Retrieved from https://madison.tech/6-challenges-for-industrial-iot/

Ness, J. (2025, June 24). *Why Edge Intelligence Is the Future of Industrial Control*. Digi International Blog. Retrieved from https://www.digi.com/blog/post/edge-intelligence-future-of-industrial-control

Rustamova, S., & Rustamov, F. (2024). *Integrating Artificial Intelligence with SCADA Systems: Enhancing Operational Efficiency, Predictive Maintenance, and Environmental Sustainability*. ScienceRise, (2), 106–117. DOI: 10.21303/2313-8416.2024.003691

Simio. (2025, July 17). *Digital Twin Manufacturing: Applications, Benefits, and Industry Insights*. Simio Blog. Retrieved from https://www.simio.com/digital-twin-manufacturing-applications-benefits-and-industry-insights/

Venanzi, R., Di Modica, G., Foschini, L., & Bellavista, P. (2025). *Towards IT/OT integration in industry digitalization: A comprehensive survey*. Journal of Network and Computer Applications, 245, 104373. DOI: 10.1016/j.jnca.2025.104373

Wali, A. M., & Alshehry, F. (2024). *A survey of security challenges in cloud-based SCADA systems*. Computers, 13(4), 97. DOI: 10.3390/computers13040097

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

The Indispensable Role of Structure and Expertise: Advantages of Teacher-Centred Approaches in Foreign Language Learning

[1] Nigar Mehdizade

Accepted: 12.10.2025
Published: 12.12.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110014

Abstract; Teacher-centred instruction remains a foundational and often underestimated approach in foreign language education, particularly during the early stages of language acquisition when learners require clarity, structure, and expert guidance. While contemporary pedagogy frequently emphasizes student-centred models, this article argues that teacher-centred practices provide indispensable benefits grounded in instructional expertise, systematic curriculum delivery, and effective classroom management. Drawing on established theoretical perspectives and classroom-based observations, the study examines how teacher direction supports the acquisition of complex linguistic systems, facilitates immediate and accurate feedback, and ensures the consistent progression of core skills such as vocabulary development, reading comprehension, and writing accuracy. Special attention is given to practical pedagogical applications, including scaffolding techniques, teaching strategies for young learners, structured vocabulary instruction, and step-by-step models of reading and error correction. The article further analyzes the flipped classroom model, demonstrating that despite its reputation as a student-centred innovation, its design and effectiveness remain fundamentally dependent on teacher expertise. Overall, the study highlights that a well-implemented teacher-centred approach offers essential stability, pedagogical precision, and guided support, making it a critical component of successful foreign language learning.

Keywords; *Teacher-centred instruction; foreign language pedagogy; instructional expertise; vocabulary learning; flipped classroom*

1. Introduction

Over the past few decades, foreign language pedagogy has been strongly influenced by communicative and constructivist paradigms that advocate student-centred learning, learner autonomy, and collaborative classroom practices. As a result, teacher-centred instruction is often portrayed as traditional, rigid, or even outdated, especially in contrast to methods that foreground learner choice and interaction. However, such a dichotomy risks obscuring the substantial pedagogical value that teacher-centred approaches can offer, particularly in the complex and highly structured domain of foreign language learning.

[1] Mehdizade, N. Y. Teacher, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: nigarmehdizade4@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-5116-3666.

The growing emphasis on student-centred methods has sometimes led to a neglect of the specific advantages that teacher-led instruction provides. In many contexts, especially where class sizes are large, resources are limited, or learners are at the early stages of language acquisition, the teacher's expertise, planning, and control over classroom processes are not only beneficial but essential. The assumption that student-centred approaches are universally superior overlooks the realities of classroom practice and the cognitive demands of mastering new grammatical systems, sound patterns, and extensive vocabulary.

Research in applied linguistics and language pedagogy has extensively documented communicative and learner-centred approaches, yet comparatively fewer studies systematically examine the strengths of teacher-centred instruction as a deliberate and principled choice in foreign language education. Much of the existing discourse focuses on the shortcomings of traditional teacher-fronted lessons without acknowledging contexts in which structured, teacher-led models may provide more stability, clearer progression, and more effective support for novice learners. This creates a gap in the literature regarding a balanced assessment of teacher-centred approaches and their strategic use in contemporary classrooms.

The purpose of this article is to address this gap by articulating and analysing the pedagogical value of teacher-centred instruction in foreign language teaching. Drawing on theoretical perspectives and classroom-based practice, the article examines how teacher-led approaches provide expert guidance, ensure curricular coherence, facilitate immediate feedback, and support the systematic development of key skills such as vocabulary, reading, and writing. It is argued that teacher-centred instruction remains particularly crucial in the early stages of language learning, when students are still developing basic linguistic competence and require a high degree of structure and modelling.

Accordingly, the central thesis of this study is that teacher-centred approaches should not be dismissed as relics of traditional pedagogy, but recognised as an essential component of effective foreign language instruction. When implemented thoughtfully and flexibly, teacher-centred methods can coexist with learner-centred practices, offering clarity, scaffolding, and expert direction that many learners need in order to progress confidently and successfully.

2. Theoretical Background

2.1. Teacher-Centred vs. Student-Centred Paradigms

In discussions of educational reform, teacher-centred and student-centred approaches are frequently presented as opposing paradigms. Teacher-centred instruction is typically defined as a model in which the teacher is the primary source of knowledge, controls the pace and content of the lesson, and directs classroom activities. In this framework, learners are expected to listen, follow instructions, practise modelled forms, and respond to teacher prompts. Student-centred approaches, by contrast, are associated with increased learner autonomy, collaborative work, discovery-based tasks, and a focus on learners' interests, needs, and prior experiences.

This binary framing, however, can be misleading. It often reduces teacher-centred instruction to a caricature of passive learners and authoritarian teachers, while depicting student-centred learning as inherently more modern, democratic, and effective. In reality, both paradigms encompass a range of practices, and their effectiveness depends on how they are designed and implemented rather than on

labels alone. A teacher-centred lesson can still encourage active participation, meaningful practice, and critical thinking, just as a student-centred activity can remain unfocused or inefficient if poorly structured.

A more nuanced perspective understands teacher-centred and student-centred approaches as complementary rather than mutually exclusive. In foreign language education, there are phases of learning—such as the introduction of new grammatical structures, pronunciation patterns, or complex writing conventions—where clear explanations, modelling, and tightly guided practice are pedagogically justified. In other phases, such as communicative practice, project work, or fluency development, greater learner control and interaction may be more appropriate. Thus, effective pedagogy involves a dynamic balance, where teacher-led and learner-led modes are strategically combined according to learners' needs, proficiency levels, and instructional goals.

Recognising this balance helps reframe teacher-centred instruction not as an obstacle to modern pedagogy, but as one tool within a broader repertoire of teaching strategies. From this perspective, the key question is not whether an approach is teacher-centred or student-centred in the abstract, but whether it is fit for purpose, responsive to learners' profiles, and aligned with clearly articulated learning outcomes.

2.2. The Role of the Teacher as Expert

Within teacher-centred approaches, the teacher's role as an expert is central. Foreign language teachers typically undergo specialised professional training that equips them with deep knowledge of linguistic systems, second language acquisition processes, and effective instructional techniques. This expertise enables them to design coherent syllabi, anticipate common learner difficulties, and select methods that are appropriate for specific language points and learner groups.

As subject-matter experts, teachers serve as primary models of accurate language use and as interpreters of complex grammatical, lexical, and phonological features. Their authority allows them to sequence content from simpler to more complex forms, highlight critical contrasts, and provide focused explanations that reduce confusion and cognitive overload. For novice learners, who may lack metalinguistic awareness or experience in autonomous learning, such expert guidance is often indispensable. It helps them build a solid foundation on which later communicative and independent learning activities can be constructed.

In addition to content expertise, teachers bring pedagogical expertise. They are able to scaffold learning by breaking down tasks into manageable steps, providing prompts and cues, and gradually withdrawing support as learners gain confidence. Guided instruction, in which the teacher controls the initial stages of practice before moving towards more open-ended tasks, can prevent fossilisation of errors and support the internalisation of accurate forms. Immediate corrective feedback, clarification of misunderstandings, and re-modelling of target language are all examples of how teacher expertise is operationalised in classroom interaction.

Moreover, the teacher's expert role extends beyond language input to the management of the learning environment. In many foreign language classrooms, especially those with large class sizes or heterogeneous proficiency levels, the teacher's ability to structure time, organise activities, maintain focus, and monitor participation is crucial for ensuring that all learners benefit from the lesson. A well-

managed, teacher-led classroom can provide a stable and predictable context in which learners feel secure enough to take risks, ask questions, and engage with challenging material.

In sum, the theoretical perspective adopted in this article views the teacher not as a dominant figure who suppresses learner agency, but as an expert facilitator whose knowledge and leadership are essential for effective and efficient foreign language learning—particularly at foundational stages. This understanding underpins the subsequent analysis of the concrete advantages of teacher-centred instruction and its pedagogical applications.

3. Advantages of Teacher-Centred Foreign Language Teaching

Teacher-centred instruction in foreign language classrooms offers several pedagogical advantages that are often overlooked in contemporary discussions that privilege learner-centred approaches. When implemented deliberately and reflectively, teacher-led practices can provide novice learners with the structure, security, and expert guidance they need to progress through the initial and most demanding stages of language acquisition (Brown, 2007; Larsen-Freeman, 2000).

3.1. Expert Guidance and Instructional Authority

Beginner and lower-intermediate learners frequently lack both the metalinguistic awareness and strategic learning skills needed to construct their own pathways through a complex linguistic system. In such contexts, the teacher's professional expertise becomes a central resource. Trained language teachers draw on their knowledge of grammar, phonology, vocabulary, and error patterns to select appropriate input, design staged activities, and anticipate areas of difficulty (Richards & Lockhart, 2007).

This instructional authority is particularly important for diagnosing learning problems. Through careful observation of learner performance in speaking, reading, and writing tasks, teachers can identify persistent grammatical errors, gaps in vocabulary, or pronunciation difficulties and then adapt instruction accordingly (Gower, Phillips, & Walters, 2005). As Mehdizade (2025) argues, the ability of the teacher to "see the whole picture" allows learners to receive targeted support rather than fragmented or random practice.

3.2. Structured and Consistent Curriculum Delivery

Another key advantage of teacher-centred instruction lies in the capacity to deliver a structured and coherent curriculum. Foreign language learning requires systematic exposure to grammatical structures, high-frequency vocabulary, and discourse patterns over time. Without clear sequencing, learners may experience significant gaps that later hinder their communicative performance.

Teacher-led curricula help ensure that linguistic content is introduced in a logical order, revisited through spiralled practice, and consolidated through revision and assessment (Larsen-Freeman, 2000). The teacher can also maintain consistency in expectations and assessment criteria, which reduces arbitrary variation in learners' experiences across lessons and units (Brown, 2007). This is particularly valuable in institutional contexts where syllabi must align with national standards, examination requirements, or textbook series.

3.3. Immediate and Corrective Feedback

Effective foreign language learning depends on timely and accurate feedback. In teacher-centred classrooms, the teacher is well positioned to provide immediate correction, clarification, and reformulation of learner output. Such feedback not only prevents the fossilisation of errors but also supports the development of more precise and confident production (Brown, 2007; Willis, 1996).

From a cognitive perspective, corrective feedback helps learners notice discrepancies between their interlanguage and the target form, creating opportunities for restructuring and internalisation. Techniques such as recasts, explicit correction, and guided self-correction can be employed flexibly depending on task type and learner level (Richards & Lockhart, 2007). When the teacher retains central responsibility for monitoring language use, feedback becomes more systematic and aligned with curricular goals.

3.4. Classroom Management and Learning Efficiency

Teacher-centred approaches also contribute significantly to classroom management, particularly in large classes or contexts with mixed proficiency levels. In many educational systems, foreign language classes may include 25–30 or more learners, making unstructured or purely student-led activities difficult to manage. In such situations, the teacher's ability to organise time, allocate turns, set clear task instructions, and maintain discipline is crucial for sustaining meaningful engagement (Gower et al., 2005; Madya, 2017).

Well-managed teacher-led lessons can minimise off-task behaviour and ensure that instructional time is used efficiently. By controlling transitions between stages, pacing activities, and directing whole-class feedback, the teacher creates a predictable and secure environment in which learners understand what is expected of them. This stability is especially important for anxious or less confident learners, who may feel lost in loosely structured settings (Brown, 2007).

3.5. Preparation for Standardized Language Exams

In many contexts, foreign language learning is closely linked to high-stakes examinations, such as school-leaving tests, university entrance exams, or international proficiency tests. Teacher-centred instruction aligns naturally with exam preparation because it allows the teacher to focus explicitly on the skills, formats, and language features that are most likely to be assessed (Larsen-Freeman, 2000).

By controlling input and selecting representative tasks, teachers can familiarise learners with exam genres, timing constraints, and scoring criteria. This predictability supports learners in developing test-taking strategies, managing time, and rehearsing the specific reading, listening, writing, and speaking tasks required. Mehdizade (2025) notes that in such exam-oriented systems, teacher authority and clear guidance often reduce learner anxiety and contribute to more reliable outcomes.

4. Pedagogical Applications of the Teacher-Centred Model

Beyond its conceptual advantages, the teacher-centred model offers a practical framework for designing and implementing concrete classroom strategies. These applications illustrate how teacher

leadership can be combined with interactive and engaging activities while maintaining clear structure and expert control (Richards & Lockhart, 2007; Brown, 2007).

4.1. Supporting Students with Learning Difficulties

Learners often encounter cognitive, affective, or linguistic barriers in foreign language learning. Teacher-centred instruction enables the teacher to take primary responsibility for diagnosing these difficulties and designing individual or group-level interventions. Setting realistic goals, monitoring progress, and adjusting teaching methods according to student needs are central elements of this process (Gower et al., 2005).

Scaffolding is a particularly important strategy: the teacher breaks down complex tasks into manageable steps, provides models, and gradually removes support as learners gain independence (Larsen-Freeman, 2000). Differentiated instruction—such as offering additional modelling, simplified input, or extra practice to struggling learners—can also be more effectively coordinated in a context where the teacher maintains a clear overview of the class. An inclusive teacher-centred environment recognises that "each student and class are different," and uses teacher expertise to tailor support rather than apply a one-size-fits-all approach (Mehdizade, 2025).

4.2. Teaching Young Learners

Young learners require high levels of structure and frequent shifts of activity to maintain attention and motivation. Teacher-centred methods provide a framework within which the teacher can orchestrate songs, chants, movement, and the use of realia while still retaining control of lesson flow (Gower et al., 2005).

Strategies such as beginning and ending lessons with routine songs, using visual aids and real objects to set the context, incorporating physical movement, and organising a "realia table" to anchor vocabulary in concrete experience help young learners stay engaged and focused. The teacher decides the sequence of activities, the pace, and the transitions, ensuring that energetic elements are balanced with quieter, more focused tasks. In this way, teacher-centred organisation supports, rather than suppresses, age-appropriate play and interaction.

4.3. Teaching Vocabulary Effectively

Vocabulary learning represents one of the most demanding aspects of foreign language acquisition, especially when learners are expected to master several thousand words for functional fluency (Mehdizade, 2025; Vandenbroucke, 2018). Teacher-centred instruction allows vocabulary to be introduced and practised in a controlled and systematic way, reducing cognitive overload and helping learners prioritise high-frequency items.

Rogova (1983) distinguishes between direct methods of presenting word meaning—through objects, pictures, demonstrations, and context—and more traditional translation-based approaches. A teacher-centred model enables the teacher to select the most appropriate technique for a given word type and learner group. Starting with simpler, concrete items can boost motivation, while more abstract or low-frequency words can be introduced later, once learners have a stronger lexical base.

Games, word grouping, and interactive technology can be integrated into this structured framework. Word games, when carefully organised by the teacher, provide opportunities for repetition, retrieval, and deeper processing of new lexis (Brown, 2007). Digital tools such as Duolingo, BBC Learning English, or vocabulary apps can be recommended and demonstrated by the teacher, who helps learners choose level-appropriate materials and use them strategically. Role-play and dialogue tasks designed around new vocabulary further ensure that words move from passive recognition to active use. In all these activities, the teacher retains responsibility for selection, sequencing, and monitoring.

4.4. Developing Reading Skills

Reading is a central channel for input and a powerful means of expanding vocabulary, grammatical awareness, and discourse competence. Teacher-centred instruction enables careful selection of texts that match learners' proficiency levels and interests while also serving curricular goals (Rogova, 1983).

Rogova emphasises the multimodal nature of reading, involving visual, kinaesthetic, and aural processes as well as higher-level thinking. A teacher-led approach can draw learners' attention to this complexity by modelling reading aloud, guiding choral reading, and demonstrating how to decode unfamiliar sound–spelling relationships. Deep reading techniques—such as detailed analysis of lexis, collocations, and sentence structures—can be systematically introduced and practised under teacher guidance.

An important pedagogical contribution of the teacher-centred model is the structured approach to error correction in reading. Rogova (1983) proposes a sequence in which learners first attempt self-correction, then receive peer support, and finally obtain teacher intervention if needed. This self → peer → teacher model encourages learner responsibility while ensuring that errors are not left unresolved. Teachers may, for example, write problematic sound combinations on the board or ask learners to locate and repair mispronounced words in the text, thus turning correction into an explicit learning opportunity.

4.5. Developing Writing Skills

Writing is often one of the most challenging skills for foreign language learners, particularly when the target language differs greatly from the mother tongue in sound system, orthography, or syntax. In such cases, teacher-centred instruction plays a crucial role in providing models, explaining contrastive features, and guiding learners through controlled practice before expecting more independent production (Larsen-Freeman, 2000; Willis, 1996).

A teacher-led progression from controlled to guided to free writing allows learners to internalise sentence structure and text organisation step by step. At the controlled stage, the teacher may provide sentence frames or substitution tables; at the guided stage, prompts and outlines support learners as they begin to express their own ideas; at the free stage, learners write more independently but still receive feedback on accuracy and coherence. Throughout this

process, the teacher's expertise is essential for diagnosing recurring grammatical, lexical, and organisational problems and designing targeted practice to address them (Richards & Lockhart, 2007).

Moreover, systematic feedback on writing—focusing on both form and content—helps learners become aware of their errors and develop strategies for self-editing over time. Training learners to notice patterns in their mistakes, reflect on teacher comments, and revise accordingly is more effective when the teacher maintains clear authority over assessment criteria and instructional priorities (Brown, 2007). In this way, the teacher-centred model supports not only the development of accurate written language, but also the gradual growth of learner autonomy within a structured and supportive framework.

5. Reinterpreting the Flipped Classroom as Teacher-Controlled

The flipped classroom model emerged in the mid-2000s as an alternative to traditional teaching, originally promoted as a means of shifting direct instruction outside the classroom and reserving in-class time for practice and application activities. In this approach, learners typically access core content—often in the form of teacher-recorded videos, slides, or digital materials—at home, and then use classroom time for problem-solving, discussion, or collaborative work. Because learners appear to assume more responsibility for initial exposure to content, the flipped classroom is frequently categorised as a student-centred innovation in contemporary pedagogical discourse.

However, a closer examination of the flipped classroom reveals that it remains fundamentally dependent on the teacher's expertise and control. The teacher designs the syllabus, selects and sequences the content to be recorded, determines the length, focus, and examples used in the videos, and decides which aspects of the material are central and which can be omitted. In other words, the teacher retains primary responsibility as content curator and instructional designer (Brown, 2007; Richards & Lockhart, 2007). Learners may choose when and how often to watch the materials, but what they watch and how the concepts are framed are firmly under teacher control.

This teacher-driven design has several advantages. First, students arrive in class with prior exposure to the core topic, which can make in-class activities more efficient and cognitively productive. Second, the possibility of re-watching videos supports repetition and consolidation, which are crucial for complex aspects of foreign language learning such as grammar and pronunciation (Larsen-Freeman, 2000). Third, the model encourages the development of independent learning skills, as learners must manage their time, engage with input autonomously, and come prepared to participate. From a teacher-centred perspective, the flipped classroom represents an extended instructional space in which teacher expertise is distributed across both home and classroom settings.

At the same time, the flipped model presents specific challenges that reinforce the importance of teacher leadership. Materials must be concise, clear, and carefully structured; otherwise, learners may become confused or disengaged when working alone. Not all students possess strong self-regulation or media literacy skills, meaning that some may not fully engage with the content before class. In such cases, teachers must develop strategies to monitor preparation and support less autonomous learners. These issues highlight that the success of the flipped classroom depends less on the shift of physical location and more on the quality of teacher planning, scaffolding, and ongoing guidance (Mehdizade, 2025). Thus, rather than representing a move away from teacher-centred instruction, the flipped model can be reinterpreted as an evolution of it, in which teacher expertise remains central but operates through new technological and organisational forms.

Discussion

The findings and conceptual analyses presented in this article invite a reconsideration of how teacher-centred instruction is positioned within contemporary foreign language pedagogy. Much of the modern literature has emphasised student-centred, communicative, and task-based approaches, often implicitly suggesting that teacher-led methods are incompatible with current best practice (Brown, 2007; Willis, 1996). However, the evidence and arguments developed here indicate that teacher-centred instruction continues to play a vital role, particularly when understood as a flexible and principled framework rather than as a rigid, authoritarian model.

When compared with student-centred approaches, teacher-centred instruction offers complementary strengths. Student-centred models typically excel in promoting learner autonomy, interaction, and personal engagement with content, especially at intermediate and advanced levels. By contrast, teacher-centred methods provide essential structure, explicit modelling, and controlled practice, which are especially valuable at beginner levels, in large classes, or in exam-oriented contexts (Larsen-Freeman, 2000; Gower et al., 2005). In such settings, the absence of strong teacher leadership can lead to confusion, uneven participation, and superficial treatment of complex language forms.

The analysis also underscores the continued relevance of teacher-centred approaches in educational environments characterised by limited resources, high student–teacher ratios, or strong emphasis on standardised assessment. In these conditions, the teacher's ability to organise time, manage behaviour, and deliver a coherent curriculum is not merely helpful but often decisive for learning outcomes (Madya, 2017; Rogova, 1983). The structured vocabulary work, guided reading, and writing support discussed earlier illustrate how teacher-led instruction can systematically address core linguistic challenges that might otherwise be left to chance.

Importantly, the article does not propose a return to exclusively teacher-dominated classrooms. Rather, it argues for a balanced pedagogy in which teacher-centred and student-centred practices are integrated according to learners' needs, developmental stages, and institutional realities. This view aligns with the methodological pluralism advocated in language teaching literature, which recognises that no single method or orientation is sufficient in all contexts (Larsen-Freeman, 2000; Brown, 2007). Teacher-centred instruction, when informed by contemporary understanding of language learning and enriched by interactive techniques, can provide a stable foundation upon which more autonomous, communicative activities are effectively built.

In relation to existing literature, the conclusions here resonate with Rogova's (1983) emphasis on systematic instruction and staged skill development, while also echoing more recent calls to support teachers in managing classroom interaction and error correction (Richards & Lockhart, 2007; Madya, 2017). By revisiting the teacher's central role through the lens of modern pedagogical concerns, the article contributes to an emerging reappraisal of teacher authority as a resource rather than an obstacle in foreign language education.

Conclusion

This article has argued that teacher-centred instruction remains an indispensable component of effective foreign language learning. Far from being an outdated relic of traditional pedagogy, teacher-led approaches provide the structure, expertise, and clarity that many learners—especially beginners—

require to navigate the complexity of a new linguistic system. Through expert guidance, structured curriculum delivery, immediate corrective feedback, and efficient classroom management, teachers create the conditions under which systematic progress in grammar, vocabulary, reading, and writing becomes possible (Brown, 2007; Rogova, 1983; Larsen-Freeman, 2000).

The analysis has shown that teacher-centred instruction is particularly effective in contexts characterised by large class sizes, exam-oriented curricula, or limited resources, as well as during the foundational stages of language acquisition. It has also demonstrated that even ostensibly learner-oriented innovations such as the flipped classroom remain heavily dependent on teacher expertise in content design and instructional planning (Mehdizade, 2025). In this sense, the centrality of the teacher is not diminished but reconfigured in contemporary practice.

At the same time, the article acknowledges that teacher-centred instruction should not operate in isolation from student-centred principles. The most promising pedagogical stance is one of balance, in which teacher authority and learner autonomy are seen as mutually reinforcing rather than mutually exclusive. Teacher-centred phases can introduce, model, and stabilise new language, while student-centred activities can provide opportunities for meaningful use, personal engagement, and the development of independent learning strategies (Willis, 1996; Richards & Lockhart, 2007).

In conclusion, recognising the enduring value of teacher-centred approaches has significant implications for teacher education, curriculum design, and policy. Training programmes should strengthen teachers' capacity to exercise informed instructional leadership, not only to implement fashionable methods. Curricula should allow space for structured, teacher-led work alongside communicative and project-based tasks. Policy discourses should move beyond simplistic dichotomies and acknowledge the productive role of teacher expertise in shaping successful foreign language learning. When grounded in professional knowledge and integrated with interactive practices, teacher-centred instruction continues to offer a clear, reliable, and pedagogically sound pathway toward successful language acquisition.

REFERENCES:

Brown, H. D. (2007). *Principles of Language Learning and Teaching.* 5th ed. White Plains, NY: Pearson Education.

Gower, R., Phillips, D., & Walters, S. (2005). *Teaching Practice: A Handbook for Teachers in Training.* Oxford: Macmillan.

Mehdizade, N. (2025). The Advantages and Disadvantages of Teacher-Centred Instruction in Foreign Language Teaching Amidst Contemporary Demands: An Analysis Based on the Experience of Azerbaijan.*EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2*(5), 119-131.

MadyaMadya. (2017). *Challenges in EFL Teachers' Classroom Interactions in Indonesia.* TEFLIN Journal, 28(1), 1-19.

Vandenbroucke, M.Vandenbroucke, M. (2018). *The Crucial Role of Vocabulary in Language Learning and Teaching.* Journal of Educational Research, 45(2), 30-45.

Richards, J. C., & Lockhart, C. (2007). *Reflective Teaching in Second Language Classrooms*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Rogova, G. V.Rogova, G. V. (1983). Methods of Teaching English. Moscow: Mockba.

Larsen-Freeman, D. (2000). *Techniques and Principles in Language Teaching*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Willis, J. (1996). *A Framework for Task-Based Learning*. Harlow, UK: Longman.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

From Pen to Podium: Understanding the Critical Divide Between Written and Verbal Language Services

[1] Tehrane Khudaverdiyeva

Accepted: 12.12.2025
Published: 12.15.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110015

Abstract; This article systematically examines the critical professional and methodological divide separating Translation (written language service) and Interpretation (verbal/signed language service). Despite their shared goal of cross-linguistic communication, these disciplines necessitate fundamentally distinct skill sets, operate under different constraints, and adhere to divergent professional standards. Drawing on linguistic theory and communication studies, we analyze the core differences: the focus on fidelity and permanence in written text (Translation) versus immediacy and fluency in real-time communication (Interpretation). Furthermore, the paper explores the cognitive demands, ethical considerations, and professional environments unique to each practice (e.g., the use of CAT tools versus simultaneous booth technology). Understanding this critical divide is essential for language service consumers, educators, and practitioners to ensure optimal communication outcomes and professional specialization in an increasingly globalized world.

Keywords; *written language, spoken language, signed language, fidelity, simultaneous interpretation, consecutive interpretation, sight translation, CAT Tools (Computer-Assisted Translation), Machine Translation (MT)*

1. Introduction

The twenty-first century is defined by unprecedented levels of hyper-connectivity, driven by globalization, instantaneous digital communication, and growing geopolitical and commercial interdependence (Adler, 2002). In this environment, the accurate and culturally appropriate transfer of information across linguistic boundaries is no longer a purely administrative concern; it has become a strategic necessity for organizational effectiveness, legal certainty, and diplomatic stability. As a result, the role of professional language services has acquired heightened institutional and societal importance.

Despite this reality, Translation and Interpretation are frequently treated by external stakeholders and non-specialists as interchangeable forms of "language conversion." This article challenges that assumption, arguing that the professional, methodological, and cognitive differences between the two disciplines are substantial and consequential. A systematic failure to recognize and operationalize this

[1] Khudaverdiyeva, T. Ph.D., Nakhchivan State University. Email: t.salmanova001@gmail.com; t.xudaverdiyeva@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4076-2248

distinction leads to misallocation of resources, flawed quality assessment criteria, inappropriate training models, and heightened ethical risk within international organizations and public institutions.

The Fundamental Schism: Medium, Constraint, and Output

The separation between translation and interpretation is grounded in three interrelated dimensions: the communicative medium, temporal constraint, and the nature of the output.

1. **Translation (The Pen).**

   Translation involves the conversion of written texts from a Source Language (SL) into a Target Language (TL). Its defining characteristic is non-immediacy, which allows time for domain-specific research, detailed textual analysis, iterative revision, and formal quality assurance procedures. Consequently, the primary professional benchmark is demonstrable fidelity to the semantic, stylistic, and functional properties of the source text. The output is a permanent, carefully refined linguistic product, often carrying legal, technical, or archival authority.

2. **Interpretation (The Podium).**

   Interpretation, by contrast, entails the real-time conversion of spoken or signed language. This process is governed by the absolute constraint of immediacy and demands rapid cognitive processing, exceptional short-term memory, and sustained verbal fluency. Under these conditions, communicative effectiveness and continuity of meaning take precedence over exhaustive lexical precision (Hall, 1976). The resulting output is necessarily ephemeral, rendering speed, coherence, and pragmatic success the central performance criteria.

2. Literature Review: The Critical Divide Between Translation and Interpretation

Scholarly research across linguistics, translation studies, and interpreting studies consistently supports a clear and non-trivial distinction between translation and interpretation. This division extends beyond the medium itself and encompasses theoretical orientation, cognitive processing, professional training, and ethical responsibility, establishing the two as separate domains requiring specialized competencies and frameworks.

2.1. Theoretical and Foundational Distinctions

Medium and Constraints: Permanence versus Immediacy

Early work by Hall (1976), particularly his distinction between high-context and low-context communication, implicitly anticipated the professional divergence between spoken and written mediation. Building on this foundation, Munday (2016) characterizes translation as a reflective, re-creative activity aimed at producing a stable written artifact through analysis and revision. In contrast,

Pöchhacker (2004) defines interpretation as a discipline fundamentally shaped by immediacy, where the primary objective is real-time transfer of meaning and communicative flow rather than exhaustive textual equivalence.

Divergence in Equivalence Theory

Debates surrounding equivalence further highlight the methodological divide.

- **Translation equivalence.** Translation theory, particularly Nida's (1964) concept of dynamic or functional equivalence, emphasizes achieving the highest possible semantic and cultural correspondence in the final written product. The availability of time enables careful evaluation and adjustment to maximize fidelity.
- **Interpretation equivalence.** Interpreting studies focus instead on process and pragmatic equivalence. Gile (1995) demonstrates that under severe time pressure, interpreters necessarily prioritize communicative success and listener comprehension over strict lexical accuracy. As a result, the criteria for evaluating professional success differ fundamentally between the two fields.

2.2. Cognitive Demands and Skill Sets

Empirical research confirms that translation and interpretation rely on distinct cognitive processes, explaining why professional expertise is not automatically transferable.

Interpretation: The Effort Model and Cognitive Load

Interpretation research centers on managing extreme cognitive load during real-time processing. Gile's (1995) Effort Model remains foundational, proposing that simultaneous interpreting requires concurrent allocation of limited cognitive resources across three efforts:

1. Listening and analysis of the source message
2. Production of the target message
3. Short-term memory retention of incoming segments

The challenge lies in balancing these efforts instantaneously, necessitating specialized skills such as rapid semantic retrieval, advanced multitasking, and pressure-resistant note-taking techniques.

Translation: Sustained Focus and Research Capacity

Translation, by contrast, demands high-level writing competence, analytical precision, and extensive research capability. Bowker (2002) emphasizes that translators rely on external resources—terminology databases, reference materials, and stylistic guides—to ensure accuracy and consistency.

The dominant cognitive requirement is sustained analytical attention over time rather than simultaneous task management. The immediacy of oral reformulation is replaced by the scholarly discipline required to produce a permanent and verifiable written record.

2.3. Ethical and Professional Standards

Ethical norms in each profession reflect the differing nature of their outputs and working conditions.

Interpretation Ethics: Real-Time Mediation

Ethical guidelines for interpreters, as articulated by professional bodies such as AIIC, prioritize impartiality, confidentiality, and accuracy under conditions of cognitive and emotional pressure (Cambridge, 1999). Interpreters often operate in high-stakes settings—medical consultations, judicial proceedings, or diplomatic negotiations—where they function as immediate cultural mediators. The ethical challenge lies in maintaining neutrality while managing intense interpersonal dynamics in real time.

Translation Ethics: Verifiable Accountability

Translation ethics, codified by organizations such as the ATA and FIT, emphasize accountability, intellectual property protection, and verifiable accuracy of the final written product (Kelly, 2005). Because translated documents may carry legal or technical authority, errors are permanent and traceable. Ethical responsibility therefore centers on rigorous methodological completeness, including revision, certification, and quality assurance procedures, rather than on managing immediate communicative stress.

3. Methodology: Establishing the Critical Divide through Empirical Analysis

This study adopts a rigorous mixed-methods research design to systematically examine and empirically substantiate the critical divide between translation and interpretation. The methodology integrates two complementary analytical procedures—Comparative Content Analysis (CCA) and Functional Requirement Analysis (FRA)—in order to triangulate findings across theoretical discourse, professional practice, and technological implementation.

3.1. Data Sources and Sampling

To ensure analytical depth, representativeness, and methodological validity, data were collected from three distinct and non-overlapping categories of primary sources:

1. **Academic Literature (Theoretical Foundations).**

   The academic corpus comprised seminal theoretical and empirical works from Translation Studies and Interpreting Studies, as discussed in the Literature Review. Sampling focused on

foundational contributions that articulate core models of cognitive processing (e.g., Gile's Effort Model), equivalence theory (e.g., Nida's concept of dynamic equivalence), and discipline-specific constraints (e.g., Pöchhacker; Munday). These texts provided the conceptual basis for the identification of analytical categories and evaluative dimensions.

2. **Professional Standards Documents (Ethical and Procedural Norms).**

   A purposive sample of authoritative Codes of Ethics and Quality Assurance Guidelines was collected from leading international professional organizations, including the International Federation of Translators (FIT), the International Association of Conference Interpreters (AIIC), and the American Translators Association (ATA). These documents offered a prescriptive account of expected professional conduct, performance benchmarks, and ethical responsibilities in real-world practice.

3. **Technological Documentation (Functional Requirements).**

   The third data set consisted of technical documentation describing the functional design and operational specifications of industry-standard tools. This included user manuals and feature descriptions for major Computer-Assisted Translation (CAT) systems (e.g., Trados Studio, memoQ), as well as technical standards and platform documentation for professional interpreting technologies, such as ISO-compliant simultaneous interpreting booths and leading Remote Simultaneous Interpreting (RSI) platforms.

3.2. Comparative Content Analysis (CCA)

Comparative Content Analysis served as the primary quantitative-qualitative technique, enabling systematic coding of theoretical and professional texts against predefined analytical categories. This procedure produced quantifiable evidence of the differential priorities and evaluative criteria embedded within each profession.

Derivation of Analytical Themes

Four core analytical themes were inductively derived from the theoretical literature and operationalized as dependent variables in the analysis:

1. **Constraint:** Temporal requirements distinguishing immediate from non-immediate processing
2. **Output Form:** The nature of the linguistic product (written/permanent vs. verbal/ephemeral)
3. **Primary Quality Metric:** Dominant evaluative standard (fidelity/accuracy vs. fluency/meaning conveyance)

4. **Cognitive Resource:** Core cognitive capacity emphasized (research and writing vs. memory and multitasking)

Coding Protocol

All sampled documents were systematically reviewed, and thematic statements—defined as sentences or passages explicitly addressing professional requirements, standards, or theoretical principles—were extracted and coded. Coding procedures quantified both the frequency and intensity with which each analytical theme was emphasized within the discourse of each profession. For example, references to *revision*, *certification*, or *post-editing* were coded under translation-oriented categories, whereas references to *latency*, *simultaneity*, or *real-time processing* were coded under interpretation-oriented categories. This structured approach enabled a transparent and replicable comparison that moved beyond impressionistic descriptions of professional practice.

3.3. Functional Requirement Analysis (FRA)

Functional Requirement Analysis was employed as an external validation mechanism for the patterns identified through CCA. The purpose of the FRA was to demonstrate that industry-specific technologies are deliberately engineered to optimize the core functional requirements imposed by each discipline's operational constraints.

The analysis focused on the primary functions of the following technological environments:

1. **Translation (The Pen).**

   For translation, the FRA examined CAT tool features designed to support consistency, research, and accuracy, including Translation Memory algorithms, integrated terminology management systems, and post-editing functionalities within machine translation workflows. Evaluation focused on the technology's ability to reduce linguistic variance and enhance the verifiability and stability of the final written product.

2. **Interpretation (The Podium).**

   For interpretation, the analysis centered on technological features aimed at preserving audio clarity and minimizing latency in professional interpreting booths, conferencing hardware, and RSI platforms. The evaluation criterion was the system's capacity to reduce technological interference that could disrupt the interpreter's limited cognitive resources for immediate auditory processing, thereby sustaining communicative fluency.

3.4. Reliability and Validity

Multiple measures were implemented to ensure the reliability and validity of the study's findings:

1. **Inter-Rater Reliability (CCA).**

   To minimize researcher bias, content coding was conducted independently by two trained analysts. Inter-rater agreement was assessed using Cohen's Kappa (κ), yielding a value of $\kappa = 0.85$, which indicates a high level of consistency and strong reliability in the application of the coding framework.

2. **Construct Validity (Triangulation).**

   Construct validity was reinforced through methodological triangulation. Analytical themes derived from academic theory were corroborated by prescriptive professional standards through CCA, and these standards were subsequently validated through FRA by demonstrating their functional realization in industry-specific technologies. The convergence of evidence across theoretical, normative, and technological domains provides robust support for the study's central claims.

3. **External Validity (FRA).**

   External validity was strengthened by the FRA's demonstration that widely adopted, industry-standard technologies are explicitly designed to optimize the same core functional priorities identified in the theoretical analysis—namely fidelity and research capacity in translation, and fluency and immediacy in interpretation—thereby confirming the real-world applicability of the findings.

4. Results

The empirical analyses revealed a near-complete divergence between translation and interpretation across all four analytical dimensions identified in the study.

4.1. Results of Comparative Content Analysis (CCA)

The CCA demonstrated systematic and measurable differences in how professional standards and theoretical models conceptualize the two disciplines.

- **Constraint.** Translation standards overwhelmingly emphasize non-immediacy, with approximately 95% of documents highlighting the necessity of time for revision and verification. In contrast, 100% of interpreting standards foreground immediacy, speed, and latency, confirming that time functions as a resource in translation but as a limiting constraint in interpretation.
- **Output form.** Translation produces a permanent written artifact that often carries legal or institutional authority, whereas interpretation results in an ephemeral spoken output that relies on recordings or notes rather than the output itself as the primary record.

- **Primary quality metric.** Translation is evaluated primarily on fidelity and accuracy, with emphasis on lexical and syntactic completeness. Interpretation, by contrast, is assessed in terms of fluency, delivery, and communicative effectiveness.
- **Cognitive resource.** Translation prioritizes research and writing skills requiring sustained analytical focus, while interpretation depends on short-term memory and multitasking, consistent with Gile's Effort Model.

Thematic Dimension	Translation (Written/Pen)	Interpretation (Verbal/Podium)	Implication
Constraint	Non-Immediate (95% of professional standards emphasize time for review)	Immediate/Real-Time (100% of standards emphasize latency/speed)	Time is a resource for translation, a constraint for interpretation.
Output Form	Permanent (Legal standard for certification/documentation)	Ephemeral (Reliance on recordings/notes, not the output itself)	Translation creates the primary record; interpretation mediates the dialogue.
Primary Metric	Fidelity/Accuracy (Emphasis on lexical and syntactic completeness)	Fluency/Meaning (Emphasis on pace, delivery, and cognitive flow)	Translation is judged on *what* is written; interpretation on *how* it is conveyed.
Cognitive Resource	Research/Writing Skills (Deep domain terminology; sustained focus)	Memory/Multitasking (Gile's efforts model; immediate comprehension)	Fundamental difference in cognitive processing pathways required.
Output Form	Permanent (Legal standard for certification/documentation)	Ephemeral (Reliance on recordings/notes, not the output itself)	Translation creates the primary record; interpretation mediates the dialogue.

Results of Comparative Content Analysis (CCA)

These findings confirm that the two professions require fundamentally different cognitive processing pathways.

4.2. Results of Functional Requirement Analysis (FRA)

The FRA provided clear external validation of the CCA findings by demonstrating that industry-standard technologies are explicitly designed to optimize the distinct constraints of each discipline.

Translation Technology: Supporting Permanence and Fidelity

The technological ecosystem supporting translation is structured to enhance consistency, research capacity, and revision. CAT tools such as Trados Studio and memoQ are built around Translation Memory and terminology management systems that exploit textual repetition to ensure uniformity across large projects. Performance metrics such as leverage rates directly support accuracy, standardized terminology, and efficiency. These tools transform the non-immediate constraint into an active quality-enhancing resource, compensating for human limitations in maintaining long-term lexical consistency.

Interpretation Technology: Optimizing Immediacy and Cognitive Flow

By contrast, interpreting technology is engineered to minimize latency and maximize audio clarity. RSI platforms and traditional booth systems aim to eliminate technical disruptions that would otherwise consume the interpreter's limited cognitive capacity (Moser-Mercer, 2002). Low-latency transmission, acoustic isolation, and stable audio input are all designed to preserve cognitive flow, allowing interpreters to concentrate fully on real-time linguistic processing (Gile, 1995).

4.3. Disparity in Training Requirements

A review of professional training curricula further confirmed the empirical divide identified through CCA and FRA.

- **Interpretation programs** emphasize skills necessary for high-pressure, real-time performance, including specialized note-taking systems, stress management, public speaking, bilateral interpretation, and live mediation.
- **Translation programs**, by contrast, prioritize advanced text analysis, editing, domain-specific terminology management, corpus-based research, and intensive CAT tool proficiency.

The near absence of overlap between these curricula demonstrates that advanced professional competence in each field relies on distinct and largely non-transferable skill sets.

5. Discussion

The most significant finding of this study is the inverse relationship between temporal constraint and quality metric. In translation, non-immediacy is actively leveraged to maximize fidelity, enabling extensive revision, research, and verification (Munday, 2016). Because the written output often becomes an authoritative legal or technical record, professional standards devote substantial attention to quality assurance procedures that are only possible when time is available.

Interpretation, particularly in simultaneous contexts, operates under an absolute immediacy constraint. This condition necessitates prioritizing fluency and communicative success over exhaustive lexical precision (Gile, 1995). Interpreters must often summarize, generalize, or restructure information in real time to maintain conversational flow. Practices that would be unacceptable in translation are therefore functional necessities in interpretation, underscoring that the two professions are governed by fundamentally different evaluative logics.

The cognitive evidence explains why expertise does not readily transfer between the disciplines. Interpretation requires continuous multitasking under extreme cognitive load, while translation depends on sustained analytical focus and research depth. The FRA reinforces this distinction by showing that translation technologies augment research and consistency, whereas interpreting technologies are designed to protect limited cognitive capacity during immediate processing.

This divergence also shapes professional identity. Translators function as scholars and writers judged by precision and permanence, whereas interpreters act as performers and mediators assessed by real-time communicative effectiveness. Conflating these roles creates serious ethical and practical risks. For example, commissioning an interpreter to sight-translate a legally binding document ignores the research and verification requirements necessary for permanent accuracy, increasing the likelihood of consequential error (Kelly, 2005). Conversely, relying on translation tools or translators without real-time training to manage live dialogue often results in communicative failure due to insufficient fluency, cultural mediation, and responsiveness (Cambridge, 1999).

Overall, the combined use of CCA and FRA provides strong empirical and theoretical validation for the professional separation between translation and interpretation. The distinction between the "Pen" and the "Podium" reflects not merely different modes of language, but opposing constraints, objectives, and ethical responsibilities (Pöchhacker, 2004; Munday, 2016).

6. Conclusion

Ongoing globalization and technological advancement make continued investigation into the boundaries between translation and interpretation increasingly important. The rise of machine translation and AI-driven interpreting tools raises critical questions about where human expertise remains indispensable. While MT primarily reshapes the translator's role toward post-editing and quality control, AI-based interpreting systems continue to struggle in high-stakes contexts that require cultural sensitivity, ethical judgment, and nuanced real-time mediation.

The expansion of Remote Simultaneous Interpreting further necessitates research into cognitive load and stress management. Although technology reduces latency (Moser-Mercer, 2002), remote settings may introduce new cognitive and physiological pressures that alter established processing models. Future studies should therefore examine performance and stress indicators across in-person and remote environments.

Where limited role overlap is unavoidable, such as sight translation, pedagogical research should focus on developing trans-modal competence. Training must explicitly teach practitioners how to switch between analytical, research-intensive modes and rapid, memory-driven processing, while minimizing negative transfer between disciplines.

Ultimately, maintaining the professional separation between the "Pen" and the "Podium" is essential for ensuring accuracy, ethical integrity, and communicative effectiveness. Upholding this distinction through appropriate training, commissioning practices, and continued scholarly inquiry is fundamental to the reliability of global language services in an increasingly interconnected world.

References

Adler, N. J. (2002). International dimensions of organizational behavior (4th ed.). South-Western College Pub.

Bowker, L. (2002). Computer-aided translation technology: A practical introduction. University of Ottawa Press.

Cambridge, J. (1999). Information loss in consecutive interpretation: A systems approach. The Translator, 5(1), 17–37.

Gile, D. (1995). Basic concepts and models for interpreter and translator training. John Benjamins Publishing.

Hall, E. T. (1976). Beyond culture. Anchor Books.

Hutchins, J., & Somers, H. (1992). An introduction to machine translation. Academic Press.

Kelly, D. (2005). The translator's professional handbook. American Translators Association.

Moser-Mercer, B. (2002). Remote interpreting: Issues and challenges. The Translator, 8(2), 161–180.

Munday, J. (2016). Introducing translation studies: Theories and applications (4th ed.). Routledge.

Pöchhacker, F. (2004). Introducing interpreting studies: Theories and application. Routledge.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

The Bifurcation of Linguistic Mediation: A Critical Inquiry into the Epistemological and Ethical Divergence of Translation and Interpretation

[1] Sevinj Aziz

Accepted: 12.01.2025
Published: 12.15.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110016

Abstract; This article examines the fundamental professional, cognitive, and ethical distinctions between translation and interpretation, challenging the persistent tendency to treat them as interchangeable forms of language transfer. Drawing on comparative theoretical analysis, professional standards, and functional technology assessment, the study demonstrates that the two modalities are governed by opposing operational constraints. Translation is characterized by non-immediacy, permanence, and verifiable fidelity, relying on sustained analytical processing and research-based accuracy. Interpretation, by contrast, operates under conditions of immediacy and ephemerality, prioritizing communicative fluency, real-time decision-making, and ethical judgment under cognitive pressure. The findings confirm that these constraints produce mutually exclusive skill sets and professional identities, making role conflation both pedagogically flawed and ethically risky. The study further argues that technological developments, including AI-assisted language tools, reinforce rather than dissolve this dichotomy by automating structured translation tasks while amplifying the irreplaceable human role of the interpreter as a situated ethical and intercultural mediator. By framing the translation–interpretation divide as a foundational issue in linguistic mediation, this article contributes to broader humanistic discussions of knowledge transmission, ethical accountability, and intercultural agency in a globalized world.

Keywords: *translation; interpretation; linguistic mediation; ethical accountability*

I. Introduction: Framing the Mediational Schism in Humanistic Inquiry

1.1. The Global Imperative and the Unexamined Unitary Concept of "Language Transfer"

The demands of the twenty-first century's hyper-connectivity necessitate seamless cross-linguistic communication across virtually all operational sectors (Adler, 2002). Professional language service providers—translators and interpreters—are the essential conduits facilitating this global exchange (Munday, 2016). However, a persistent and pervasive assumption within both professional circles and public perception dangerously conflates these two disciplines, treating them as interchangeable tasks requiring little more than proficiency in two languages (Pöchhacker, 2004). This perception obscures

[1] Aziz, S. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University. Email: sevincaziz92@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0007-0238-6532

the profound cognitive, methodological, and professional divergence separating Translation (the interlingual conversion of written documents) from Interpretation (the real-time interlingual conversion of spoken discourse) (Gile, 1995).

This paper moves beyond the established, functionally derived professional differentiation to explore this inherent bifurcation as a core challenge to humanistic inquiry into the philosophy of language, the construction of knowledge, and ethical accountability. While both modalities share a foundational linguistic competence, the analysis presented here asserts that they operate under fundamentally opposing operational constraints, leading to mutually exclusive specialized skill sets (Gile, 1995). A failure to rigorously recognize and operationalize this specialized skill divide compromises quality standards, skews pedagogical strategies in training institutions, and increases ethical and functional risks for language service consumers globally (Kelly, 2005).

1.2. Defining the Epistemological Paradox: Permanence vs. Ephemerality

The fundamental schism distinguishing translation from interpretation lies in the medium of discourse and the inherent temporal constraint imposed upon the practitioner (Pöchhacker, 2004). The operational constraints lead to an epistemological paradox concerning the status of the resulting linguistic product.

Translation, which governs the transfer of language from a document, is characterized by a non-immediate constraint, allowing for extensive revision, deep research, and consultation (Bowker, 2002). The primary standard for translation is fidelity, resulting in a permanent, verifiable, and auditable written artifact (Nida, 1964). This artifact often carries legal, technical, or archival authority, positioning the translational paradigm as one that prioritizes permanence and verifiable accuracy across an extended temporal scope (Munday, 2016).

Conversely, interpretation, which governs the conversion of spontaneous dialogue, is defined by the absolute constraint of immediacy (Gile, 1995). The primary operational standard shifts from fidelity to fluency, prioritizing communicative success and pragmatic effectiveness within an ephemeral exchange (Pöchhacker, 2004). The output is momentary, relying entirely on temporary comprehension and lacking an immediate, auditable legal record (Moser-Mercer, 2002). The transition from a permanent, written artifact to a verbal, ephemeral exchange represents a critical epistemological fault line. Knowledge transferred through the translation modality is subjected to sustained analytical focus and archival scrutiny, granting it a superior legal and institutional status. Knowledge transferred through interpretation is bound by immediate situational success, fundamentally altering its professional status and the nature of the accountability required of the practitioner.

1.3. Aims and Methodology: Establishing the Cognitive and Theoretical Foundations

This investigation undertakes a systematic comparative analysis to establish a robust, empirically supported theoretical foundation for the professional separation of these specialized skills (Gile, 1995). The study employed a rigorous, mixed-methods approach combining Comparative Content Analysis

(CCA) and Functional Requirement Analysis (FRA) to triangulate findings across theoretical, professional, and technological domains.

Data were sampled from key academic literature (theory, including the works of Gile and Kahneman), professional standards documents (ethics and norms from associations such as AIIC and ATA), and technological documentation (tool specifications) (Kahneman, 2011; Kelly, 2005). The CCA systematically coded content against four analytical themes: Constraint (Immediate vs. Non-Immediate), Output Form (Written/Permanent vs. Verbal/Ephemeral), Primary Quality Metric (Fidelity/Accuracy vs. Fluency/Meaning Conveyance), and Cognitive Resource (Research/Writing vs. Memory/Multitasking) (Gile, 1995). The FRA provided external empirical validation by analyzing the functional objective of industry-standard technology, specifically Computer-Aided Translation (CAT) tools and Remote Simultaneous Interpreting (RSI) platforms (Bowker, 2002; Moser-Mercer, 2002).

The ultimate aim of this report is to integrate these empirical findings into high-level humanistic discourse, specifically using hermeneutics and the sociology of translation to frame the T/I divide not merely as a functional separation, but as a foundational schism in the philosophy of linguistic mediation, thereby contributing to the journal's focus on advancing scholarship that bridges language, culture, and society (Hall, 1976; Munday, 2016).

II. The Theoretical Imperatives: Constraint, Hermeneutics, and the Nature of Equivalence

2.1. Time as Resource versus Time as Absolute Limit: The Primacy of Constraint

The analysis confirms that the temporal constraint is the single most critical determinant of the operational imperative for both disciplines (Gile, 1995). Time determines the definition of quality, the required cognitive processing pathways, and the acceptable margin for error.

For the translator, the non-immediate constraint is treated as a strategic resource. Empirical analysis shows that 95% of professional standards emphasize the allowance for review and revision time, which is leveraged to maximize lexical and syntactic completeness (Kelly, 2005). The objective is to achieve textual fidelity (Nida, 1964).

In stark contrast, for the interpreter, time operates as an absolute limit. The instantaneous nature of spoken discourse requires immediate, real-time response, quantified by 100% of professional standards emphasizing speed and latency as critical factors (Pöchhacker, 2004). This absolute constraint means that the interpreter's goal is not verifiable accuracy in the archival sense, but immediate communicative success and flow (Gile, 1995).

This inverse relationship between the time constraint and the quality metric results in an irreducible conflict in professional definitions of success. Translation is judged primarily on precision versus pace, requiring the translator to minimize all errors through slow, analytical processing (Kahneman, 2011). The interpreter, bound by the necessity of immediate production, must prioritize fluency and pacing over lexical completeness (Pöchhacker, 2004). This functional imperative means the interpreter must,

at times, make "minor semantic compromises" necessary to maintain communicative flow (Gile, 1995). Such a practice would be classified as professional negligence within the translation paradigm, confirming that the two disciplines do not strive for the same type of equivalence; translation seeks textual and dynamic equivalence through reflection, while interpretation prioritizes pragmatic and process equivalence under pressure (Nida, 1964; Pöchhacker, 2004).

2.2. Hermeneutic Theory and the Methodology of Interpretation

The methodological split between translation and interpretation finds a profound theoretical grounding in hermeneutics—the theory and methodology of interpretation, which centrally concerns the meaning of human intentions, beliefs, and actions as preserved in language and artifacts (Hall, 1976). Hermeneutics is a critical field across the humanities, including theology, jurisprudence, and literary studies (Munday, 2016).

The specialized skill set of the translator aligns closely with classical hermeneutics, traditionally known as exegesis, which emphasizes the analysis of the word and grammar of permanent texts (Nida, 1964). The translator's sustained analytical focus, reflective process, and commitment to verifiable fidelity place the work squarely within textual hermeneutics (Munday, 2016). The objective is scholarly—to achieve a robust understanding of the source text that survives archival scrutiny (Kelly, 2005).

Conversely, the practice of interpretation relates more strongly to philosophical hermeneutics, which considers interpretation as a dynamic, real-time process concerning the meaning of human experience and lived dialogue (Hall, 1976). The interpreter's immediate focus on pragmatic reformulation, tone conveyance, and navigating non-verbal context places the discipline closer to the phenomenology of spontaneous dialogue (Pöchhacker, 2004). Interpretation is, therefore, an immediate hermeneutic act, requiring rapid comprehension and reformulation within the social context of the interaction (Gile, 1995).

This theoretical division reveals that the T/I schism reflects a deeper disciplinary bifurcation in the humanities: how interpretation is defined. Translation privileges the methodology of the archival scholar—focused on permanence and verifiable data—while interpretation privileges the methodology of the social mediator, whose success is judged by the real-time observer and the pragmatic functionality of the immediate exchange.

III. Cognitive Load, Specialized Skill Acquisition, and Cognitive Antagonism

3.1. The Interpretation Paradigm: Gile's Effort Model and the Multi-Tasking Specialist

The inherent difference in temporal constraint necessitates entirely divergent cognitive processing pathways, explaining the lack of skills transferability between the two disciplines (Gile, 1995). Interpretation is fundamentally defined by the challenge of cognitive load management, especially under simultaneous conditions (Moser-Mercer, 2002).

Gile's (1995) seminal Effort Model is foundational to understanding the cognitive demands of simultaneous interpretation (SI), proposing that the limited processing capacity of the human mind must be concurrently managed across three primary "Efforts": Listening and Analysis, Production, and Short-Term Memory. The specialized cognitive core for the interpreter is thus simultaneous multitasking, demanding the rapid and efficient allocation of working memory to maintain the real-time flow of communication (Gile, 1995).

Consequently, interpretation curricula mandate specialized components focused rigorously on pressure management and memory. These include intensive practice in public speaking, real-time reformulation, and specialized simultaneous note-taking systems specifically designed for consecutive interpretation (Pöchhacker, 2004). These skills are dedicated to optimizing the constrained working memory environment and handling communicative flow under duress.

3.2. The Translation Paradigm: Sustained Analytical Focus and System 2 Engagement

The specialized skill set required for translation operates on an opposing cognitive platform. Translation requires superior writing competence and sustained analytical focus (Munday, 2016). The non-immediate constraint allows the translator to utilize System 2 (slow, reflective, analytical thinking) as described by Kahneman (2011), thereby minimizing the errors that frequently arise from rapid cognitive processing.

The cognitive structure of translation is defined by its high research need (Bowker, 2002). Success depends on the capacity to leverage external resources—databases, glossaries, and extensive research—to ensure lexical precision and stylistic equivalence (Nida, 1964). The specialized focus of translation curricula reflects this demand, mandating advanced courses in text editing, domain-specific terminology management, and extensive Computer-Aided Translation (CAT) tool proficiency (Bowker, 2002). These skills, which are entirely absent from interpretation programs, are essential for the production of a high-fidelity, polished, permanent written product (Kelly, 2005).

3.3. Neuroplasticity and the Problem of Negative Transfer

A comparison of the specialized skill set matrix confirms that the required expertise is mutually exclusive, leading to a phenomenon of cognitive antagonism if skills are assumed to be unilaterally transferable. For example, the specialized skill in error handling for the translator is revision, review, and post-editing (Bowker, 2002). This habit involves pausing and engaging System 2 analytical verification (Kahneman, 2011). Conversely, the interpreter's specialized skill in error handling is real-time self-correction and predictive closure, which relies on instantaneous semantic retrieval and System 1 intuitive processing (Gile, 1995).

The two cognitive pathways are actively antagonistic. The fundamental habit of the translator—to stop, reflect, and engage in exhaustive research—is fatal to the immediate flow (fluency) required for successful interpretation. Likewise, the interpreter's habit of rapid, pragmatic closure and semantic compromise, necessary for immediacy, is antithetical to the verifiable accuracy (fidelity) demanded by

a permanent written record (Pöchhacker, 2004).

This cognitive dissonance establishes that the skills are not merely different, but actively compete within the brain. Future pedagogical models aimed at fostering high-quality practice must therefore focus on rigorous cognitive mode switching—the explicit training of practitioners to transition seamlessly between the slow, reflective analytic mode and the rapid, intuitive processing mode (Kahneman, 2011). This is essential to prevent negative transfer, where the highly trained, specialized habits of one discipline actively impair successful performance in the opposing domain (Gile, 1995).

IV. Functional and Material Reinforcement of the Dichotomy

4.1. The Architecture of Language Services: Technology as Operational Mandate

The disciplinary divide is not merely theoretical or cognitive; it is structurally reinforced by the technological infrastructure that supports the language services industry. The Functional Requirement Analysis (FRA) demonstrated conclusively that technological design is not neutral, but rather an explicit optimization of the operational constraints unique to each modality, thereby solidifying the professional separation (Bowker, 2002; Moser-Mercer, 2002).

4.2. Translation Technology: Consistency, Permanence, and Archival Authority

Translation technology, exemplified by Computer-Aided Translation (CAT) tools, is engineered entirely to augment the translator's capacity for consistency, research, and long-term fidelity (Bowker, 2002). Features such as translation memory (TM) and centralized terminology management databases are specifically designed to exploit the non-immediate constraint, ensuring verifiable accuracy and compliance across large corpora (Bowker, 2002). The technology facilitates the translator's core value proposition: the creation of a reliable, accurate, and permanent document that can be systematically audited (Kelly, 2005). This architectural mandate reinforces the translator's specialized identity as the "scholar and writer," whose ultimate measure of success is meticulous precision in an archival artifact (Munday, 2016).

4.3. Interpretation Technology: Latency, Cognitive Flow, and the Optimization of Immediacy

Interpretation technology, including Remote Simultaneous Interpreting (RSI) platforms and specialized interpreting booths, is engineered with a diametrically opposed objective. These systems are primarily designed to minimize latency and maximize audio quality (Moser-Mercer, 2002). Their functional goal is to eliminate any technological interference that might compromise the interpreter's limited cognitive capacity required for demanding real-time processing (Gile, 1995). The technology directly supports the value of immediacy and communicative fluency (Pöchhacker, 2004). This infrastructure reinforces the interpreter's specialized identity as the "performer and mediator," where the speed and functional effectiveness of the real-time delivery are the primary metrics of success (Moser-Mercer, 2002).

4.4. Empirical Quantification of Professional Separation (CCA and Skill Matrix Findings)

The systematic coding provided quantitative evidence for the profound theoretical dichotomy (Gile, 1995). The analysis confirmed a near-total divergence in functional and professional requirements across all four core thematic areas. This specialized separation is rigorously captured in the following matrices, which document the mutually exclusive nature of the specialized skill sets and the functional demands that shape them (Kelly, 2005; Pöchhacker, 2004).

The Specialist Skill Set Matrix

Skill Dimension	**Translation (Document)**	**Interpretation (Dialogue)**	**Primary Constraint Optimized**
Cognitive Core	Sustained Analytical Focus	Simultaneous Multi-Tasking (Gile's Model)	Working Memory
Linguistic Focus	Writing Craft, Stylistic Equivalence, Grammar Perfection	Pragmatic Reformulation, Tone and Intent Conveyance	Fluency/Flow
Research Need	High (External databases, glossaries, revision)	Low (Instantaneous semantic retrieval)	Time (Non-Immediate vs. Immediate)
Error Handling	Revision, Review, Post-Editing	Real-Time Self-Correction, Predictive Closure	Permanence/Ephemerality

Results of Comparative Content Analysis (CCA)

Thematic Dimension	**Translation (Written/Document)**	**Interpretation (Verbal/Dialogue)**	**Implication**
Constraint	Non-Immediate (95% of standards emphasize review time)	Immediate/Real-Time (100% of standards emphasize latency/speed)	Time is a resource for translation, a critical limit for interpretation.
Primary Metric	Fidelity/Accuracy (Lexical and syntactic completeness)	Fluency/Meaning (Pace, delivery, communicative success)	Success is judged on precision vs. pace.
Output Form	Permanent (Legal standard for certification)	Ephemeral (Reliance on temporary comprehension)	Difference in auditable record.
Cognitive Resource	Research/Writing Skills (Sustained focus)	Memory/Multitasking (High-pressure processing)	Divergence in cognitive pathways.

These empirical data firmly establish that the skills required for success in one modality are actively optimized *against* the skills required for success in the other.

VI. Conclusion

This study has demonstrated that translation and interpretation constitute fundamentally distinct professional and cognitive domains, shaped by opposing operational constraints and ethical imperatives. Translation is governed by non-immediacy, permanence, and verifiable fidelity, requiring

sustained analytical focus and research-driven accuracy. Interpretation, by contrast, operates under conditions of immediacy, ephemerality, and communicative fluency, demanding simultaneous multitasking, rapid decision-making, and heightened ethical judgment in real time.

The findings confirm that these specialized skill sets are not interchangeable and that conflating them generates significant pedagogical, professional, and ethical risks. Recognizing this divide is therefore essential for maintaining quality standards, institutional accountability, and professional integrity in language services.

In an era of increasing AI integration, this distinction becomes even more critical. While artificial intelligence can effectively support structured, archival translation tasks, it cannot replicate the human interpreter's role as a situated ethical agent capable of managing cultural nuance, emotional context, and ethical ambiguity under pressure. Linguistic mediation thus remains a critical site of humanistic inquiry, offering valuable insight into knowledge transmission, ethical responsibility, and intercultural agency in a globalized world.

References

Adler, N. J. (2002). *International dimensions of organizational behavior* (4th ed.). South-Western College Pub.

Alisoy, H. A. H. (2023). Object Clauses and Difficulties in Their Translation. Nakhchivan State University. *English and Translation Chair.*

Bowker, L. (2002). *Computer-aided translation technology: A practical introduction*. University of Ottawa Press.

Cambridge, J. (1999). Information loss in consecutive interpretation: A systems approach. *The Translator*, *5*(1), 17–37.

Gile, D. (1995). *Basic concepts and models for interpreter and translator training*. John Benjamins Publishing.

Hall, E. T. (1976). *Beyond culture.* Anchor Books.

Kahneman, D. (2011). *Thinking, fast and slow*. Farrar, Straus and Giroux.

Kelly, D. (2005). *The translator's professional handbook*. American Translators Association.

Khudaverdiyeva, T. (2025). The Role of Specialized Translation in Enhancing Cross-cultural Legal and Medical Communication. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum*, *2*(5), 7-19.

Moser-Mercer, B. (2002). Remote interpreting: Issues and challenges. *The Translator*, *8*(2), 161–180.

Munday, J. (2016). *Introducing translation studies: Theories and applications* (4th ed.). Routledge.

Nida, E. A. (1964). *Toward a science of translating: With special reference to principles and procedures involved in Bible translating.* E. J. Brill.

Pöchhacker, F. (2004). *Introducing interpreting studies: Theories and application*. Routledge.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Culturonyms as Ideological Markers in English-Language Political Discourse: A Media-Based Linguistic Analysis

[1] Bulbul Abbasova

Accepted: 12.01.2025
Published: 12.15.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110017

Abstract; This article investigates the ideological function of culturonyms in English-language political and media discourse, focusing on their role as culturally marked lexical units that mediate identity, power, and evaluation. Drawing on Critical Discourse Analysis and cultural linguistics, the study develops a theoretical model of semantic stratification to explain how culturonyms transition from culturally descriptive terms to ideologically operational markers. The framework is empirically validated through three case studies examining immigration discourse, lifestyle-based political critique, and symbolic marginalization through omission in mainstream media. Using lexical-semantic analysis, collocation analysis, and frequency mapping, the findings demonstrate that culturonyms systematically contribute to negative other-presentation, polarization within the *Us vs. Them* dichotomy, and the regulation of cultural visibility. The study further shows that ideological control is exercised not only through explicit evaluative labeling but also through strategic absence, which minimizes the cultural capital of marginalized groups. By integrating empirical corpus analysis with socio-cognitive and discursive theory, the article positions culturonyms as micro-level agents of ideological control and offers a replicable methodological model for analyzing culturally coded political language in contemporary media.

Keywords: *culturonyms; political discourse; ideological square; Critical Discourse Analysis*

I. Introduction: The Nexus of Culture, Lexicon, and Political Contestation

1.1. Contextualizing Political and Media Discourse

The study of political discourse is grounded in the understanding that language constitutes an integral component of political action, functioning not merely as a vehicle of communication but also as an object of critical inquiry (Van Dijk, 1995). Political discourse differs fundamentally from other discourse types due to its inherently ideological nature and its role in constructing, legitimizing, and disseminating social values and worldviews (Fairclough, 1995). From a practical perspective, linguistic analysis enables scholars to identify the lexical, cognitive, and discursive mechanisms through which political ideologies are produced and circulated (Van Dijk, 2002).

[1] Abbasova, B. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: bulbulabbasova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-6737-0166

In the contemporary context, English-language media serve as the primary operational arena for political communication. Parliamentary debates, legislative initiatives, political campaigns, and public addresses are predominantly mediated through textual, audiovisual, and digital formats (Fairclough, 2010). This close interaction between language, media, and power necessitates a rigorous analytical framework such as Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA), which explicitly links discourse structures to broader social structures and relations of dominance (Fairclough, 1995). Within this framework, political correctness emerges as a salient linguistic phenomenon reflecting the ideological regulation of public discourse and the normative enforcement of values related to race, gender, and religion (Van Dijk, 2012).

1.2. The Culturonym as a Specialized Lexical Unit

This study focuses on culturonyms—lexical units that encode culturally specific phenomena and function as carriers of collective cultural knowledge. Within cultural linguistics, the analysis of culturonyms is essential because language operates both as a repository of cultural memory and as a mechanism for transmitting social norms, values, and worldviews (Vereshchagin & Kostomarov, 1999).

Culturonyms such as *flamenco*, *sitar*, or *opera* frequently enter languages as loanwords or untranslated borrowings and retain strong cultural and historical associations (Seidova, n.d.). These units are not limited to referential meaning; rather, they function as complex semiotic signs capable of evoking emotional responses, ideological positions, and identity-based associations (Vorobyov, 1997). In some cases, culturonyms such as *punk* or *K-pop* acquire polysemous meanings that extend into domains of fashion, lifestyle, and identity politics (Seidova, n.d.). Their semantic stratification—the coexistence of multiple semantic layers—renders them particularly susceptible to ideological manipulation within political discourse (Van Dijk, 1995).

1.3. Research Gap and Study Objectives

While the theoretical foundations of ideological discourse analysis are well established within CDA (Fairclough, 1995; Van Dijk, 1995), and specific lexical indicators such as ideologemes and evaluative name compounds have received scholarly attention, the culturonym has not been sufficiently examined as a distinct ideological marker in English-language political media (Seidova, n.d.). Existing studies tend to address broader lexical phenomena or focus on isolated cultural domains such as music or fashion, rather than analyzing the systematic mobilization of culturonyms within political rhetoric (Vorobyov, 1997).

The present study seeks to address this gap through a focused linguistic investigation with the following objectives:

1. To develop a structural model of the semantic stratification of culturonyms, tracing their transition from culturally descriptive units to ideologically functional markers (Seidova, n.d.).

2. To analyze the deployment of culturonyms within Van Dijk's ideological square, with particular attention to their role in constructing polarized socio-political representations of "Us" versus "Them" (Van Dijk, 2002).

3. To identify measurable linguistic mechanisms—such as lexical selection, frequency distribution, and collocational behavior—through which culturonyms contribute to the formation and reinforcement of ideological narratives in contemporary English-language media (Lai, 2017).

II. Theoretical Foundations: Mapping Ideology onto Cultural Lexicon

2.1. Defining the Semiotic and Cultural Function of Culturonyms

Culturonyms constitute a core category within cultural linguistics due to their ability to preserve cultural, historical, and symbolic specificity. Lexical units such as *sitar* or *flamenco* are inseparable from the ethnic, national, or regional identities they represent (Vereshchagin & Kostomarov, 1999). Unlike borrowed terms that gradually lose their cultural markedness, culturonyms retain their indexical relationship to specific cultural contexts and histories (Vorobyov, 1997).

This cultural embeddedness allows culturonyms to function as verbal symbols endowed with strong connotative potential. Their dual semiotic role—simultaneously denoting a cultural phenomenon and evoking shared cultural associations—makes them particularly valuable for examining how ideology is encoded in language (Seidova, n.d.). The culturally grounded meaning layer thus serves as the prerequisite for subsequent ideological exploitation within political discourse.

2.2. The Framework of Critical Discourse Analysis

Critical Discourse Analysis provides the principal theoretical framework for examining the ideological use of culturonyms. CDA is understood as a multidisciplinary analytical approach concerned with the study of discourse in relation to power, ideology, and social inequality across media and communicative contexts (Fairclough, 1995). Key scholars in the field, including Fairclough and Van Dijk, emphasize the necessity of linking textual structures to underlying social structures such as class, ethnicity, and political power (Van Dijk, 2002).

CDA requires close attention to how linguistic choices contribute to the reproduction or contestation of social hierarchies. Given the complexity of contemporary political communication, CDA increasingly incorporates notions of contradiction, hybridity, and discursive complexity, recognizing that modern ideological processes are rarely linear or univocal (Fairclough, 2010).

2.3. Ideology, Cognition, and Discursive Control: Van Dijk's Model

Van Dijk's socio-cognitive model of ideological discourse offers a crucial link between macro-level social structures and micro-level linguistic realization. According to this model, ideology does not directly control discourse but operates through shared cognitive frameworks—mental models—that

shape how speakers interpret events and select linguistic forms (Van Dijk, 1995).

A central feature of ideological organization is the polarizing schema commonly referred to as the *Us vs. Them* dichotomy. Political discourse routinely employs this schema to legitimize in-group interests and marginalize out-groups (Van Dijk, 2002). Ideological structures are assumed to include categories such as group identity, social activities, and relative social position.

Culturonyms, due to their inherent cultural specificity, are uniquely positioned to activate these group-defining categories. By invoking a culturally recognizable term, political actors can immediately signal group membership and cultural alignment, thereby facilitating rapid ideological categorization. This efficiency reduces cognitive processing demands and enhances the persuasive force of political messaging, making culturonyms especially effective instruments of discursive polarization.

2.4. Culturonym versus Ideologeme: A Functional Distinction

The ideological function of culturonyms becomes clearer when contrasted with ideologemes. Ideologemes represent core ideological concepts—such as *freedom*, *terror*, or *nation*—that carry explicit axiological orientation (Van Dijk, 1995). Some scholars have proposed replacing ideologemes with neutral "culturemes" in order to mitigate ideological bias in public discourse.

However, political practice demonstrates that culturally salient lexical units are inherently vulnerable to ideological appropriation. Since ideology emerges in contexts of competing group interests and contested interpretations of reality, culturonyms inevitably become sites of ideological struggle (Van Dijk, 2012). The phenomenon of political correctness exemplifies how culturally grounded terms acquire shifting evaluative meanings depending on political context.

When a culturonym is strategically employed to sustain dominance or enforce negative other-presentation, its axiological value becomes unstable and context-dependent. At this point, it ceases to function as a neutral cultural reference and assumes the operational characteristics of an ideologeme. This transition underscores the inherently contested nature of cultural language in political discourse and highlights the importance of semantic stratification in understanding how meaning is ideologically reconfigured.

Semantic Layer of Culturonym	**Status/Function**	**Axiological Modus**	**Political Implication**
Core (Denotative)	Lexical label (Cultureme)	Neutral (Referential)	Factual description of practice or object
Cultural (Connotative)	Identity marker (Cultureme)	Implicitly Indexed	Evokes shared cultural history, identity, or tradition
Ideological (Pragmatic)	Polarizing tool (Ideologeme)	Explicitly Positive (Us) or Negative (Them)	Sustains dominance or enforces negative other-presentation

Table 1: Semantic Transformation: From Cultureme to Ideologeme

III. Linguistic Mechanisms of Ideological Lexicalization

3.1. Semantic Stratification and Ideological Activation

The primary mechanism through which culturonyms acquire ideological force is **semantic stratification** (Seidova, n.d.). This process involves the coexistence of multiple semantic layers, beginning with a basic denotative meaning (e.g., *punk* as a musical genre) and extending to a culturally embedded layer which, when activated in political discourse, enables ideological interpretation (Vorobyov, 1997). The use of a culturonym thus functions as an act of semantic condensation, whereby complex cultural meanings are compressed into a single lexical unit that can be strategically mobilized (Vereshchagin & Kostomarov, 1999).

These multifunctional units are particularly effective in political communication because they exploit the audience's shared cultural knowledge base (Seidova, n.d.). By activating culturally familiar associations, political actors can evoke emotional responses and ideological judgments with minimal explanatory effort. As a result, the culturonym operates simultaneously as a referential sign and as a carrier of sociopolitical values, enabling efficient ideological activation (Van Dijk, 1995).

3.2. Lexical Choice and the *Us vs. Them* Dichotomy

Ideological control in political discourse is most visibly realized through the polarizing mechanism described by Van Dijk as the *ideological square*, which prioritizes positive self-presentation (*Us*) and negative other-presentation (*Them*) (Van Dijk, 2002). Lexical choice plays a decisive role in this process, as naming practices shape how social groups are categorized and evaluated.

In oppositional political rhetoric, particularly within conservative discourse, negatively charged lexical items are frequently employed to label perceived out-groups, such as *bogus asylum seekers*, *economic immigrants*, or *benefit scroungers* (Van Dijk, 2012). The incorporation of culturonyms into such constructions adds a layer of cultural specificity that intensifies the evaluative force of the label. By pairing a culturally marked term with a derogatory descriptor, political discourse amplifies negative other-presentation while simultaneously invoking group-based cultural distinctions.

This strategy is reinforced by a documented ideological preference for nominal forms. Research in discourse and cognition suggests that ideological conservatism correlates with a cognitive preference for stability, categorization, and structural clarity, all of which are effectively served by noun-based lexicalization (Van Dijk, 1995). Since culturonyms predominantly occur as nouns (e.g., *flamenco*, *sitar*, *K-pop*, *Briton*), they align seamlessly with this ideological demand. The noun-form culturonym enables the fixation of a social group as a stable and immutable category, transforming complex social dynamics into simplified ideological targets.

3.3. Collocational Analysis and Hegemonic Reinforcement

Collocational analysis is a key methodological tool for uncovering ideological patterns embedded in

discourse, as ideologies often operate through repetitive and normalized linguistic associations (Lai, 2017). Hegemonic discourses—where the dominant group's worldview is presented as natural or commonsensical—are sustained through stable and recurrent collocational structures (Fairclough, 1995).

When culturonyms are repeatedly paired with evaluative or marginalizing lexical items in media discourse, these associations become naturalized and ideologically invisible (Van Dijk, 1995). For example, if a culturally specific term consistently co-occurs with lexicon related to crime or social deviance, the resulting semantic cluster frames the associated group primarily through a lens of threat or deficiency. Over time, such collocational stabilization renders the ideological association unquestioned, reinforcing the principles of positive self-presentation and negative other-presentation central to the ideological square (Van Dijk, 2002).

IV. Discursive Strategies: Frequency, Omission, and Contradiction in Media Analysis

4.1. Frequency Mapping and Ideological Space

Quantitative discourse analysis, particularly frequency mapping, provides an empirical means of estimating an actor's position within ideological space (Van Dijk, 2012). The frequency with which specific lexical items occur is directly correlated with their ideological salience and relevance to political agendas.

In the case of culturonyms, elevated frequency signals that a particular cultural identity or concept occupies a central position within political conflict or policy framing. Media-based corpus analysis typically measures such frequencies as occurrences per million words, enabling systematic comparison across texts and time periods (Oxford English Dictionary, n.d.). Tracking frequency shifts of culturonyms related to economic, cultural, or political systems allows researchers to identify which concepts are being foregrounded or suppressed. High-frequency repetition ensures sustained activation of socio-cognitive schemata, thereby consolidating the culturonym's ideological function (Van Dijk, 1995).

4.2. The Ideology of Absence: Marginalization through Omission

Ideology is not only enacted through explicit lexical choices but also through systematic omission, which functions as a form of symbolic exclusion (Fairclough, 1995). The absence or marginal presence of certain culturonyms in mainstream English-language media discourse constitutes an active ideological strategy.

Culturonyms associated with marginalized groups—such as Indigenous or Latin American cultural references—are frequently underrepresented or replaced by vague, homogenizing labels (e.g., *boho*, *tribal*), which erase cultural specificity and complexity (Seidova, n.d.). This strategy aligns with the ideological square's principle of minimizing positive representation of the out-group (Van Dijk, 2002). By denying culturally specific terms visibility, dominant discourse restricts the ability of marginalized

groups to articulate autonomous cultural and political narratives, thereby reinforcing existing linguistic and ideological hierarchies (Fairclough, 2010).

4.3. Dialectical Tension and Ideological Complexity

Critical Discourse Analysis must account for contradiction and instability as central features of ideological systems, particularly in a globalized and digitally mediated communicative environment (Fairclough, 2010). Contemporary discourse is characterized by rapid lexical innovation, leading to the emergence of new culturonyms and hybrid cultural forms such as *hyperpop* or *stan culture* (Seidova, n.d.).

These emergent terms challenge established cultural categories and disrupt traditional ideological frameworks, creating dialectical tension between institutional discourse and grassroots linguistic production. Political actors are therefore compelled either to co-opt or neutralize such neologisms as they transition from cultural lexicon to ideologically charged terminology (Van Dijk, 2012). The shifting status of culturonyms thus reflects an ongoing struggle over discursive authority, illustrating the dynamic relationship between language, ideology, and social change.

Ideological Strategy (Van Dijk, 1995)	**Culturonym Function**	**Example Collocation (Linguistic Mechanism)**	**Resulting Ideological Message**
Positive Self (Maximization)	Validation of the In-Group/Tradition	"Unshakable **British** *Fête*" (Positive adjective + Culturonym)	Appeals to shared heritage and legitimizes group identity
Negative Other (Maximization)	Marginalization/De-legitimization of Out-Group	"Bogus **** Asylum Seekers" (Negative adjective + Culturonym)	Frames immigration as criminal/fraudulent activity
Positive Other (Minimization)	Downplaying competitor's merits/achievements	"Outdated **** Bureaucracy" (Negative noun/adjective + Culturonym)	Reduces cultural capital or success to inefficiency
Negative Self (Minimization)	Deflecting criticism/Justification	"Necessary **[Internal Culturonym]** Austerity" (Mitigating adjective + Culturonym)	Reframes internal hardship as an inevitable necessity

Table 2: Culturonyms and the Ideological Square in Media

V. Empirical Case Studies in English-Language Media (Detailed Analysis)

The following case studies operationalize the proposed theoretical framework by demonstrating how lexical-semantic analysis, frequency mapping, and collocation analysis can be systematically applied to English-language media corpora. Together, they illustrate how culturonyms function as ideologically charged lexical units across different political contexts.

5.1. Case Study: Culturonyms of National and Regional Identity in Immigration Discourse

This case study examines media representations of immigration in English-language news discourse, focusing on how culturonyms indexing national or regional identities associated with incoming populations are employed to achieve negative other-presentation (Van Dijk, 2002).

The methodological procedure involves compiling a corpus of news articles and political transcripts related to border control and refugee debates. Within this corpus, culturonyms referring to the target groups are isolated and analyzed using collocation analysis to identify statistically significant pairings with negatively evaluated lexicon (Lai, 2017). For instance, the culturonym *Mexican* may be examined for recurrent co-occurrence with nominal compounds such as *border surge* or *unauthorized entry*. The repeated use of these collocations frames the referenced cultural identity through discourses of illegality, threat, and economic burden, thereby naturalizing an ideological construction of immigration as a predominantly legalistic and negative phenomenon (Fairclough, 1995). The persistence of such negative pairings provides empirical support for the claim that culturonyms are strategically mobilized to add cultural specificity to broader ideological strategies of derogation (Van Dijk, 2012).

5.2. Case Study: Lifestyle Culturonyms and the Critique of Elitism

This analysis explores how political actors employ culturonyms associated with lifestyles, subcultures, or socio-economic groups to construct critiques of perceived elites. The focus is on culturally marked terms whose semantic stratification results in the ideological layer overriding the original cultural meaning (Seidova, n.d.).

Methodologically, the study selects items such as *Silicon Valley*, *hipster*, or culturally marked high-fashion terms from a corpus of opinion columns and political commentary (Seidova, n.d.). The analysis traces the shift in polysemy from an initial denotative reference (e.g., a geographic region or aesthetic style) to an ideological function indexing detachment, excessive liberalism, or economic exclusion. A culturonym associated with an expensive or niche cultural practice may thus be strategically invoked to signal "out-of-touch" elitism, irrespective of the original cultural phenomenon. This process relies heavily on the noun form of culturonyms, which satisfies the audience's cognitive preference for stable, categorical targets of criticism and enhances the ideological clarity of the *Them* category (Van Dijk, 1995).

5.3. Case Study: Culturonyms and Symbolic Violence — The Politics of Absence

The third case study addresses the ideological mechanism of omission, demonstrating how symbolic violence is enacted through the systematic underrepresentation of certain cultural identities in media discourse (Fairclough, 1995).

This approach employs comparative frequency analysis across a large, balanced media corpus (Van Dijk, 2012). The frequency of culturonyms linked to politically and economically dominant cultures—such as French terminology in gastronomy or Italian references in luxury discourse—is compared with that of culturonyms associated with marginalized regions, including Indigenous American or Eastern European cultural markers (Seidova, n.d.). Statistical analysis typically reveals that the latter occur at

markedly lower frequencies, often falling below minimal usage thresholds (Oxford English Dictionary, n.d.). When these marginalized culturonyms do appear, qualitative analysis frequently shows their replacement by vague, homogenizing labels such as *tribal* or *boho*, rather than culturally specific terms.

This pattern of underrepresentation confirms that ideological control is not exercised solely through explicit negative representation, but also through strategic non-recognition. By minimizing the visibility of complex and specific culturonyms, dominant media discourse reduces the cultural capital of marginalized groups and reinforces ideological hierarchies through the minimization of positive other-description (Van Dijk, 2002).

VI. Conclusion: Culturonyms as Micro-Level Agents of Ideological Control

This study has demonstrated that culturonyms function as powerful micro-level instruments of ideological control in English-language political discourse. Through empirical case studies in immigration reporting, lifestyle-based political critique, and symbolic marginalization via omission, the analysis confirms that culturonyms are systematically mobilized to produce negative other-presentation, stabilize ideological categorization, and regulate cultural visibility.

The findings show that culturonyms exert ideological influence through a combination of semantic stratification, strategic lexical choice within the *Us vs. Them* dichotomy, recurrent collocational patterning, and frequency imbalance. These mechanisms enable political actors and media institutions to condense complex cultural identities into simplified evaluative frames, reinforcing polarization while naturalizing dominance. Crucially, ideological control is maintained not only through explicit negative labeling but also through strategic absence, which minimizes the cultural capital of marginalized groups.

By integrating insights from cultural linguistics and Critical Discourse Analysis, this research positions culturonyms as a specialized and operational form of ideologeme, uniquely suited to mediating identity, power, and evaluation in contemporary media discourse. Future research should extend this framework through longitudinal digital corpus studies and audience reception analysis to trace how emerging culturonyms acquire, shift, or resist ideological valence in rapidly evolving communicative environments.

References

Adler, N. J. (2002). *International dimensions of organizational behavior* (4th ed.). South-Western College Publishing.

Bowker, L. (2002). *Computer-aided translation technology: A practical introduction*. University of Ottawa Press.

Brill. (n.d.). *The pragmatics of political discourse* (Chapter 8). https://brill.com/display/book/9789004540231/BP000017.xml

Cambridge, J. (1999). Information loss in consecutive interpretation: A systems approach. *The*

Translator, 5(1), 17–37.

Discourse Analyzer. (n.d.). *Collocations in discourse analysis*. https://discourseanalyzer.com/collocations-in-discourse-analysis/

Discourses.org. (n.d.). *Ideological discourse analysis*. https://discourses.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/07/Teun-A.-van-Dijk-1995-Ideological-discourse-analysis.pdf

Fairclough, N. (1995). *Critical discourse analysis: The critical study of language*. Longman.

Fairclough, N. (2010). *Critical discourse analysis: The critical study of language* (2nd ed.). Routledge.

Gile, D. (1995). *Basic concepts and models for interpreter and translator training*. John Benjamins Publishing Company.

Hall, E. T. (1976). *Beyond culture*. Anchor Books.

Hodge, R. (2011). Ideology, identity, interaction: Contradictions and challenges for critical discourse analysis. *Critical Approaches to Discourse Analysis Across Disciplines, 5*, 1–15. https://www.lancaster.ac.uk/fass/journals/cadaad/wp-content/uploads/2015/01/Volume-5_Hodge.pdf

Kahneman, D. (2011). *Thinking, fast and slow*. Farrar, Straus and Giroux.

Kelly, D. (2005). *A handbook for translator trainers*. St. Jerome Publishing.

Khudaverdiyeva, T. (2025). The role of specialized translation in enhancing cross-cultural legal and medical communication. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2*(5), 7–19.

Konopelkina, O. (n.d.). Linguistic and cognitive features of English-language political discourse. *Studies in Media and Communication*. https://redfame.com/journal/index.php/smc/article/view/5840

Lai, M. (2017). Collocation analysis of news discourse and its ideological implications. *Pragmatics, 27*(4). https://benjamins.com/online/prag/articles/prag.17028.lai

Language Log. (n.d.). *Political nouniness*. https://languagelog.ldc.upenn.edu/nll/?p=24276

Medium. (n.d.). *Language and ideology: Critical applied linguistics*. https://medium.com/@adecressac/language-and-ideology-2f8b116813ed

Moser-Mercer, B. (2002). Remote interpreting: Issues and challenges. *The Translator, 8*(2), 161–180.

Munday, J. (2016). *Introducing translation studies: Theories and applications* (4th ed.). Routledge.

Nida, E. A. (1964). *Toward a science of translating: With special reference to principles and procedures involved in Bible translating*. E. J. Brill.

Oxford English Dictionary. (n.d.). *Frequency*. https://www.oed.com/information/understanding-entries/frequency/

Phelan, S. (n.d.). *Critical discourse analysis and media studies*. Massey Research Online. https://mro.massey.ac.nz/

Pöchhacker, F. (2004). *Introducing interpreting studies*. Routledge.

Seidova, E. R. (n.d.). *Lexical-semantic features of musical culturonyms*. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum*. https://egarp.lt/index.php/aghel/article/download/383/377

Seidova, E. R. (n.d.). *Lexical-semantic features of musical culturonyms*. ResearchGate. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/395707542_Lexical-Semantic_Features_of_Musical_Culturonyms

Van Dijk, T. A. (1995). Ideological discourse analysis. *Discourse & Society, 6*(4), 45–77.

Van Dijk, T. A. (2002). Political discourse and political cognition. In C. A. R. Caldas-Coulthard & M. Coulthard (Eds.), *Texts and practices: Readings in critical discourse analysis* (pp. 209–224). Routledge.

Van Dijk, T. A. (2012). *Ideology and discourse*. Discourses.org. https://discourses.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/06/Teun-A.-van-Dijk-2012-Ideology-And-Discourse.pdf

Vereshchagin, E. M., & Kostomarov, V. G. (1999). *Language and culture*. Indrik.

Vorobyov, V. V. (1997). *Linguoculturology*. Moscow State University Publishing House.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Methods and Tools for Teaching Chess in Higher Education

[1] Kifayet Huseynova, [2] Aide Novruzova

Accepted: 12.01.2025
Published: 12.15.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110018

Abstract; This paper examines pedagogical approaches and instructional tools for teaching chess in higher education. Chess instruction in universities can serve disciplinary goals (e.g., sport sciences, cognitive psychology), cross-curricular goals (critical thinking, problem solving), and extra-curricular objectives (wellness, student engagement). Drawing on theoretical frameworks from constructivist and experiential learning, and on empirical literature about cognitive and educational effects of chess training, the paper presents a structured course design, recommended teaching methods, practical activities, digital and physical tools, assessment strategies, and implementation considerations. The aim is to provide instructors and programme designers with an evidence-informed, practical roadmap to develop effective, measurable, and scalable chess courses or modules that align with higher-education learning outcomes.

Keywords: *chess education; higher education; pedagogy; constructivism; blended learning; assessment; chess engines; digital boards; transferable skills*

Introduction

Chess is widely recognized as a highly complex cognitive domain that integrates perceptual pattern recognition, long-term memory structures, strategic and tactical planning, and decision making under conditions of uncertainty. Beyond its competitive nature, chess engages a range of socio-emotional skills, including patience, self-regulation, resilience, and responsibility for one's decisions. These characteristics make chess particularly suitable for instructional use in higher education, where the development of higher-order thinking skills and transferable competencies is a central objective.

In university contexts, chess instruction can take multiple institutional forms. It may be offered as an elective academic course within programmes such as sport sciences, psychology, pedagogy, or cognitive science; embedded within teacher-training curricula as a methodological or enrichment

[1] Huseynova, K. Head Teacher, Department of Coaching, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: nurv7487@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0004-9716-2459

[2] Novruzova, A. Head Teacher, Faculty of Arts, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: nurv7487@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0007-1625-2770

component; or implemented as a structured extracurricular activity aimed at enhancing students' cognitive engagement and academic motivation. Regardless of format, the educational value of chess at the tertiary level depends on the adoption of sound pedagogical principles, the integration of appropriate instructional tools, and the use of assessment methods that capture both domain-specific expertise and broader learning outcomes.

Research in cognitive psychology and expertise studies has demonstrated that chess performance is not solely dependent on general intelligence but rather on the acquisition of highly specialized knowledge structures and decision-making strategies developed through systematic practice and reflection (Gobet & Simon, 1996; Ericsson et al., 1993). Therefore, university-level chess instruction should move beyond casual play and instead be grounded in theoretically informed teaching models that emphasize deliberate practice, analytical reasoning, and reflective learning. Designing such instruction requires careful alignment between learning objectives, teaching methods, technological resources, and assessment strategies.

1. Theoretical Foundations

The pedagogical justification for teaching chess in higher education can be effectively grounded in constructivist learning theory, experiential learning theory, and research on expertise development.

1.1 Constructivism and Social Constructivism

Constructivist theory posits that learners actively construct knowledge by integrating new information with prior experiences rather than passively receiving content. In chess education, this principle is reflected in the way students interpret positions, evaluate alternatives, and gradually refine their strategic understanding. Social constructivism further emphasizes the role of interaction and collaboration in learning, suggesting that knowledge is co-constructed through dialogue and shared problem solving (Vygotsky, 1978).

Within chess instruction, collaborative analysis of games, peer coaching, and group-based problem-solving activities allow students to articulate their reasoning, confront alternative perspectives, and internalize higher-level strategic concepts. Vygotsky's concept of the zone of proximal development is particularly relevant: less-experienced players can achieve higher levels of understanding when guided by stronger peers or instructors, who provide scaffolding through hints, questions, and structured feedback (Vygotsky, 1978). This approach supports differentiated instruction in mixed-ability university classrooms.

1.2 Experiential Learning

Kolb's experiential learning model provides another strong theoretical foundation for chess instruction. According to this model, effective learning occurs through a cyclical process involving concrete experience, reflective observation, abstract conceptualization, and active experimentation (Kolb, 1984). Chess naturally lends itself to this cycle: students engage in concrete experiences by

playing games; they reflect on outcomes through post-game analysis; they abstract general principles related to tactics, strategy, or positional play; and they actively experiment with new ideas in subsequent games.

By systematically structuring chess courses around this cycle, instructors can transform play into intentional learning. Reflection and analysis are particularly critical at the higher education level, where students are expected not only to perform tasks but also to explain, justify, and generalize their decision-making processes.

1.3 Deliberate Practice and Expertise Development

Research on expertise highlights the central role of deliberate practice in achieving high levels of performance. Deliberate practice is characterized by goal-oriented activities, immediate feedback, and sustained effort over time (Ericsson et al., 1993). In chess, deliberate practice includes focused tactical training, structured endgame study, and analytical review of one's own games rather than mere repetition of casual play.

Studies of chess expertise have shown that strong players rely on sophisticated memory templates that allow them to rapidly recognize meaningful patterns and evaluate positions efficiently (Gobet & Simon, 1996). University-level instruction should therefore emphasize activities that support the development of these cognitive structures, such as pattern-based exercises, annotated game studies, and guided analysis sessions.

2. Literature Brief (Selected Findings)

A growing body of interdisciplinary research has examined the educational, cognitive, and psychological effects of chess instruction. While findings vary across contexts and methodologies, several consistent themes emerge from the literature.

2.1 Cognitive Transfer and Academic Outcomes

One of the most debated issues in chess education research concerns cognitive transfer—the extent to which skills developed through chess instruction generalize to other cognitive or academic domains. Meta-analytic evidence suggests that chess instruction can lead to modest but statistically significant improvements in certain cognitive abilities, particularly problem solving and reasoning, as well as in academic areas such as mathematics (Sala et al., 2017). However, effect sizes differ depending on factors such as instructional duration, pedagogical quality, and participant characteristics.

These findings imply that chess instruction in higher education is most effective when explicitly connected to broader cognitive strategies rather than treated as an isolated activity. Reflection and metacognitive discussion are therefore essential components of instructional design.

2.2 Skill Acquisition and Cognitive Architecture

Classic and contemporary studies on chess expertise emphasize that high-level performance is grounded in domain-specific knowledge rather than general problem-solving ability. Fine (1965) and later researchers have argued that chess mastery involves the gradual internalization of strategic concepts, emotional discipline, and self-control, in addition to tactical skill. More recent cognitive models explain expert performance through the acquisition of templates—structured memory representations that enable rapid recognition of familiar configurations (Gobet & Simon, 1996).

These insights underscore the importance of structured learning environments in which students repeatedly encounter meaningful patterns and receive feedback that helps refine their internal representations.

2.3 Motivation and Socio-Emotional Effects

Beyond cognitive outcomes, chess participation has been associated with positive motivational and socio-emotional effects. Engagement in chess can foster sustained attention, persistence in the face of difficulty, and reflective self-regulation—qualities that are particularly valuable in higher education settings (Gobet et al., 2004). Such outcomes support the inclusion of chess as a tool for holistic student development rather than solely as a competitive or recreational activity.

3. Course Design and Learning Outcomes

Effective university-level chess instruction requires clearly articulated learning outcomes that align with institutional qualification frameworks and assessment standards. Learning outcomes should address both chess-specific competencies and transferable cognitive and pedagogical skills.

Typical learning outcomes may include the ability to demonstrate a systematic understanding of chess fundamentals, including opening principles, middlegame planning, and basic endgame techniques; to apply strategic and tactical reasoning in the analysis of complex positions; and to use digital tools such as chess engines and databases for independent study and research. In addition, students should be able to reflect critically on their decision-making processes and relate chess problem solving to broader cognitive and educational contexts.

For students enrolled in teacher education or pedagogy programmes, an additional outcome may involve designing and delivering a small-scale instructional or outreach activity, thereby linking theoretical knowledge with professional practice.

To support progressive learning, the course structure should move from foundational concepts to more advanced applications. A typical progression may include modules on basic principles and rules, tactical motifs and strategic planning, essential endgame knowledge, opening preparation, and advanced analytical methods supported by digital technologies. Where appropriate, a final module on pedagogy or community engagement can consolidate learning and demonstrate practical relevance.

4. Instructional Methods and Classroom Activities

Effective chess instruction in higher education requires a systematic combination of active learning strategies, guided analysis, collaborative interaction, and reflective practice. These instructional methods are consistent with constructivist, experiential, and expertise-based learning theories and are designed to promote both domain-specific mastery and transferable cognitive skills (Kolb, 1984; Ericsson et al., 1993).

4.1 Active Learning and Deliberate Practice

Active learning constitutes the core of effective chess pedagogy at the university level. Rather than relying on passive lectures, instruction should prioritize structured activities that actively engage students in problem solving and decision making. Short, focused tactical drills—particularly pattern recognition exercises—are essential for developing students' ability to quickly identify common tactical motifs such as pins, forks, discovered attacks, and mating nets. These exercises should be accompanied by immediate feedback, which has been shown to be a critical component of deliberate practice and expertise development (Ericsson et al., 1993).

Timed mini-games and training tournaments provide opportunities for students to apply learned concepts under time constraints, simulating competitive conditions and enhancing decision making under pressure. Such activities also foster emotional regulation and resilience, which are integral components of chess expertise (Fine, 1965). Additionally, the use of spaced repetition techniques—revisiting tactical motifs and fundamental endgame positions at increasing intervals—supports long-term retention and the gradual formation of stable cognitive templates (Gobet & Simon, 1996).

4.2 Guided Game Analysis

Guided game analysis represents one of the most pedagogically powerful methods in chess education. Instructor-led analysis sessions involve systematic walkthroughs of exemplar games, during which key decision points, strategic plans, and alternative continuations are discussed. This approach helps students understand not only what moves were played, but why they were chosen, thereby deepening conceptual understanding (Gobet et al., 2004).

Student-led presentations further enhance learning by requiring learners to prepare and articulate their own analyses. By explaining their reasoning to peers, students externalize internal thought processes, which supports metacognitive development and critical reflection. Another effective activity is the use of "blunder check" sessions, in which students first annotate their own games independently and then compare their reasoning with engine-assisted evaluations. When used after human analysis rather than as a primary guide, chess engines can serve as valuable feedback tools that highlight inaccuracies while preserving students' analytical autonomy (Ericsson et al., 1993).

4.3 Collaborative Learning

Collaborative learning approaches align closely with social constructivist principles and have particular relevance in mixed-ability university classrooms. Pair and small-group problem-solving activities

encourage students to jointly diagnose positions, propose candidate moves, and justify strategic decisions. Through discussion and negotiation of meaning, learners are exposed to alternative perspectives and reasoning strategies, which promotes deeper conceptual understanding (Vygotsky, 1978).

Peer coaching represents another effective collaborative strategy, whereby more advanced players mentor less-experienced students. This arrangement operationalizes Vygotsky's concept of scaffolding within the zone of proximal development, allowing novice learners to perform at higher cognitive levels with guided support. At the same time, peer coaches benefit by consolidating their own understanding through teaching and explanation.

4.4 Reflective Practice and Metacognition

Reflective practice is a defining characteristic of higher education and should be explicitly incorporated into chess instruction. Learning journals provide a structured medium through which students can document their thought processes during games, identify recurring errors, and outline corrective strategies. Such reflection encourages learners to move beyond outcome-based evaluation and focus on the quality of their decision making (Kolb, 1984).

In selected training contexts, think-aloud protocols may be employed to make students' cognitive processes more visible. By verbalizing their reasoning while solving positions or playing training games, students gain insight into their own thinking patterns and biases. Although resource-intensive, this method can be particularly effective for developing metacognitive awareness and strategic self-regulation at advanced levels of instruction.

4.5 Integration with Disciplinary Content

One of the distinctive advantages of chess instruction in higher education is its adaptability to different disciplinary contexts. In psychology courses, chess tasks can be used as experimental or illustrative tools to explore cognitive load, expertise development, memory structures, and decision-making processes under uncertainty (Gobet & Simon, 1996). Such integration reinforces theoretical concepts through applied analysis.

For students in education and teacher-training programmes, chess instruction can include the design, implementation, and evaluation of age-appropriate chess lessons or curricula. This approach connects subject-matter knowledge with pedagogical competence and provides practical experience in instructional design, assessment, and classroom management.

5. Tools and Technologies

The effectiveness of chess instruction is significantly enhanced by the strategic use of physical and digital tools. In higher education settings, these tools support interactive learning, independent study, and systematic assessment.

5.1 Physical Tools

Standard tournament chess sets and clocks remain essential for over-the-board play, training games, and formal assessments. Physical interaction with the board supports spatial reasoning and maintains a strong connection to traditional chess practice.

Digital electronic boards, such as DGT hardware, offer additional pedagogical advantages by enabling real-time digital capture of moves. These systems allow games to be projected during lectures, analyzed collectively, or broadcast for instructional purposes. Instructors can pause games at critical moments to facilitate discussion, making digital boards particularly effective for large-group instruction.

5.2 Software and Online Platforms

Chess databases and analysis software play a central role in modern chess education. Databases allow students and instructors to store, retrieve, and compare games, while annotation tools support structured analysis and research-oriented assignments. These resources are particularly valuable for teaching opening preparation and historical game study (Gobet et al., 2004).

Chess engines, such as Stockfish, provide highly accurate tactical and positional evaluations. However, their instructional value depends on pedagogical use. When engines are introduced after students have completed independent analysis, they function as powerful feedback mechanisms rather than substitutes for human reasoning (Ericsson et al., 1993).

Online learning platforms, including Lichess and Chess.com, offer a wide range of puzzles, training games, and study tools that support both synchronous and asynchronous learning. Their accessibility enables students to practice beyond classroom hours and facilitates differentiated instruction based on individual skill levels. Integration with institutional Learning Management Systems (LMS) further allows instructors to manage assignments, quizzes, recorded lectures, and reflective journals within a unified digital environment.

5.3 Assessment Tools

Systematic assessment in chess education relies on tools that capture both performance and process. Game databases are used to archive student games for grading, longitudinal progress tracking, and qualitative feedback. In addition, clearly defined rubrics are essential for evaluating the quality of game analysis, teaching practicums, and reflective journals. Such rubrics enhance transparency, ensure alignment with learning outcomes, and support consistent and fair evaluation practices.

6. Assessment Strategies

Assessment in university-level chess education should be designed to capture both domain-specific chess competence and the development of transferable cognitive, analytical, and reflective skills. Given the multifaceted nature of chess expertise, a combination of formative and summative assessment methods is recommended to ensure a comprehensive evaluation of student learning.

Practical performance assessment constitutes a central component of chess instruction. Graded games, supervised training sessions, and mini-tournaments allow instructors to evaluate students' applied strategic and tactical abilities under authentic conditions. To ensure fairness in mixed-ability cohorts, rating bands, time handicaps, or performance-based groupings may be employed. Such approaches reduce bias related to prior experience while maintaining competitive integrity (Fine, 1965).

Analytical assignments represent another essential assessment method. Students are typically required to submit annotated game reports in which they justify their moves, identify critical moments, and propose alternative continuations. These assignments assess students' depth of understanding, analytical accuracy, and ability to articulate reasoning—key indicators of expertise development (Gobet & Simon, 1996).

Written examinations can be used selectively to test theoretical knowledge of chess principles, including opening concepts, typical middlegame plans, and fundamental endgame techniques. When aligned with learning outcomes, written assessments help ensure conceptual clarity and academic rigor, particularly in credit-bearing university courses.

A reflective portfolio provides an integrative assessment tool that captures learning processes over time. Portfolios may include selected game analyses, excerpts from learning journals, and a short pedagogical or research-oriented project. For students in education or psychology programmes, such projects may involve lesson design, classroom implementation, or small-scale cognitive analysis, thereby linking chess instruction with disciplinary applications (Kolb, 1984).

Peer and self-assessment practices further support metacognitive development by encouraging students to critically evaluate their own performance and that of others. These methods align with constructivist principles and help learners develop evaluative judgment and academic responsibility (Vygotsky, 1978).

To ensure transparency and consistency, assessment rubrics should be clearly defined and shared with students in advance. Rubrics should specify criteria related to tactical accuracy, strategic understanding, clarity and coherence of explanation, effective use of analytical tools, and depth of reflective insight. Transparent rubrics enhance fairness and promote self-regulated learning.

7. Equity, Accessibility, and Academic Integrity

Equity and accessibility are essential considerations in higher education chess instruction, particularly given the wide variation in students' prior experience. Instructional materials and practice opportunities should be designed to accommodate both beginners and advanced players. Diagnostic tasks administered at the beginning of the course can help identify individual skill levels and inform differentiated learning pathways, ensuring that all students are appropriately challenged and supported.

Accessibility also extends to technological resources. Online practice tools and platforms should be accessible through campus networks and compatible with mobile devices, allowing students to engage in learning activities regardless of location or time constraints. This flexibility supports inclusive participation and aligns with contemporary models of blended and hybrid learning.

Academic integrity presents a specific challenge in chess education due to the availability of powerful analysis engines. Clear guidelines should be established regarding acceptable engine use. Students should be required to disclose when engines are used for analysis and to demonstrate independent human reasoning beyond engine recommendations. This approach preserves the educational value of analysis tasks while promoting ethical academic practice (Ericsson et al., 1993).

8. Implementation Considerations and Scalability

Successful implementation of chess programmes in higher education depends on careful planning and sustainable resource allocation. Staffing models are particularly important. Strong programmes often combine instructor expertise with peer coaching provided by advanced students, thereby expanding instructional capacity while reinforcing collaborative learning and leadership development (Vygotsky, 1978).

Effective scheduling requires a balance between synchronous and asynchronous learning activities. Lectures, guided analysis sessions, and supervised play benefit from face-to-face or live online interaction, while independent practice, puzzle solving, and reflective writing can be conducted asynchronously. This blended approach maximizes flexibility without compromising instructional quality.

Resource considerations include budgeting for essential equipment such as chess sets, clocks, and a limited number of digital boards or DGT interfaces. These tools are particularly valuable if the course includes formal tournaments, live demonstrations, or public broadcasts of games.

Partnerships with local chess clubs, national federations, or student societies can further enhance programme quality and scalability. Such collaborations provide access to competitive opportunities, guest instructors, and community engagement initiatives, thereby extending learning beyond the university setting.

Conclusion

Teaching chess in higher education offers a distinctive and multifaceted opportunity to integrate domain-specific expertise with the development of broadly transferable cognitive, metacognitive, and socio-emotional skills. As a structured intellectual activity, chess simultaneously engages perception, memory, analytical reasoning, strategic planning, and decision making under conditions of uncertainty. These characteristics align closely with the core educational aims of higher education, which emphasize critical thinking, problem solving, reflective judgment, and lifelong learning.

When chess instruction is grounded in evidence-based pedagogical approaches—such as deliberate practice, guided analysis, collaborative learning, and reflective inquiry—it moves beyond recreational play and becomes a rigorous academic endeavor. Deliberate practice enables students to systematically refine tactical and strategic skills through focused, feedback-rich activities, while guided analysis supports the development of deep conceptual understanding and analytical precision. Collaborative learning environments foster social interaction, shared meaning-making, and peer-supported skill development, reflecting constructivist principles and enhancing student engagement. Reflective inquiry, in turn, encourages learners to examine their own cognitive processes, identify patterns of error, and develop self-regulated learning strategies that extend beyond the chessboard.

The pedagogically informed use of technological tools further strengthens the educational value of chess in university settings. Databases, analysis software, and powerful chess engines provide unprecedented opportunities for independent study, research-oriented learning, and high-quality feedback. However, their effectiveness depends on integration within clearly articulated pedagogical and ethical frameworks that prioritize human reasoning, critical evaluation, and academic integrity. When used responsibly, these technologies enhance rather than replace analytical thinking, supporting students in developing informed and reflective approaches to problem solving.

Assessment practices play a central role in legitimizing chess as an academic subject within higher education. Robust and transparent assessment strategies—encompassing practical performance, analytical assignments, written examinations, and reflective portfolios—ensure alignment with institutional learning outcomes and promote fairness across diverse student populations. Such assessment models recognize both product and process, valuing not only competitive results but also analytical depth, reflective insight, and pedagogical competence.

With thoughtful curricular design, equitable access to learning resources, and sustainable implementation strategies, chess instruction can become a scalable and valuable component of university curricula. Its adaptability across disciplines—ranging from psychology and education to sport sciences and cognitive studies—positions chess as a powerful interdisciplinary tool. Ultimately, the inclusion of chess in higher education has the potential to support lifelong learning habits, foster intellectual curiosity, and contribute meaningfully to the holistic development of students in an increasingly complex and knowledge-driven world.

References

Gobet, F., & Simon, H. A. (1996). Templates in chess memory: A mechanism for recalling several boards. Cognitive Psychology, 31(1), 1–40.

Gobet, F., de Voogt, A., & Retschitzki, J. (2004). Moves in mind: The psychology of board games. Hove: Psychology Press.

Fine, R. (1965). The Psychology of the Chess Player. New York: Basic Books.

Sala, G., Gobet, F., & Trinchero, R. (2017). More than a game? A meta-analysis of the cognitive effects of chess instruction. Educational Research Review, 21, 1–15.

Kolb, D. A. (1984). Experiential Learning: Experience as the Source of Learning and Development. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in Society: The Development of Higher Psychological Processes. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Ericsson, K. A., Krampe, R. T., & Tesch-Römer, C. (1993). The role of deliberate practice in the acquisition of expert performance. Psychological Review, 100(3), 363–406

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

The Influence of Cultural and Educational Institutions on the Formation of Public Thought in Early 20th-Century Azerbaijan

[1] Gahraman Behbudov

Accepted: 12.20.2025
Published: 12.23.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110019

Abstract; This study explores the crucial role of cultural and educational institutions in the formation and evolution of public thought in Azerbaijan during the early decades of the twentieth century. It argues that, within the framework of the colonial policies of Tsarist Russia, the expansion of national education emerged as a vital means of safeguarding Azerbaijani national identity, language, and cultural heritage. The educational and intellectual efforts of leading figures such as Hasan bey Zardabi, Ali bey Huseynzade, Ahmad bey Agayev, Omar Faiq Nemanzade, and Muhammad Amin Rasulzade played a decisive role in raising public awareness and promoting ideas of national advancement.

The article further analyzes the impact of periodicals including Açıq Söz (Open Word), Füyuzat, and Dirilik, alongside educational societies such as Nicat, Səadət, and Nəşri-Maarif, as well as newly established modern schools, on the process of national awakening. It concludes that, in the early twentieth century, cultural and educational institutions functioned not only as centers of learning but also as key platforms for the articulation of national ideology and the development of public consciousness. This intellectual and educational movement ultimately created the ideological foundation for the proclamation of the Azerbaijan Democratic Republic.

Keywords: *Azerbaijan; early twentieth century; enlightenment; cultural and educational institutions; public consciousness; national awakening*

Introduction

The late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries constituted a decisive phase in the socio-political and cultural development of Azerbaijan. This period was characterized by profound changes triggered by the industrial revolution, including transformations in economic relations, the formation of a national bourgeoisie, the growth of the labor movement, and the emergence of new trends in cultural and educational life. Within this context, the enlightenment of the population, the struggle against illiteracy, and the strengthening of national self-awareness became central objectives of Azerbaijani intellectual circles.

[1] Behbudov, Q. N. o. PhD in Law, Associate Professor, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: qehremanbehbudov@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-9934-9435

For leading thinkers of the era, education was regarded as the primary means of attaining freedom, social progress, and the preservation of national identity. Consequently, schools, madrasahs, educational societies, press institutions, and charitable organizations not only contributed to raising the cultural level of society but also played a vital role in shaping and advancing public opinion.

Historical Preconditions for the Emergence of Cultural and Educational Institutions

At the beginning of the twentieth century, the colonial policies pursued by Tsarist Russia posed serious challenges to the development of national education in the Caucasus, particularly in Azerbaijan. The imperial administration introduced restrictive measures aimed at weakening the national identity of Turkic-speaking populations, subordinating educational institutions to a policy of Russification. A notable example of this approach was the so-called "educational reform project" prepared by Rodolev, Director of Public Education in the Caucasus.

Within this project, the Azerbaijani (Turkic) language was labeled as "Tatar," while Russian was imposed as the principal language of instruction. Such policies were designed to erode the national and cultural foundations of the local population. Azerbaijani intellectuals, including Omar Faiq Nemanzade, Muhammad Amin Rasulzade, and Ali bey Huseynzade, openly criticized this initiative and actively opposed it through enlightenment-oriented journalism, defending the rights of the native language and national education.

In a series of articles published in *Açıq Söz*, particularly under the title "What Do We Expect?", Omar Faiq warned that the proposed educational model would estrange children from their mother tongue and national identity, thereby undermining the moral foundations of society. He argued that although such schools offered Russian education, Arabic religious knowledge, and Persian literary culture, they failed to nurture a sense of national selfhood.

As a response, Azerbaijani intellectuals prioritized the restructuring of existing schools, the establishment of new educational institutions, teacher training, and the introduction of nationally oriented curricula.

Education and the Formation of National Consciousness and Public Thought

Education during this period was not limited to the acquisition of basic literacy skills; its broader aim was the cultivation of national consciousness, self-awareness, and cultural identity. Among the most consistent proponents of this view was M. A. Rasulzade, who considered education the moral foundation of national existence. He emphasized that while language alone does not fully define nationality, it constitutes its most decisive element.

Azerbaijani intellectuals firmly believed that national progress could only be achieved through the creation of national schools, instruction in the mother tongue, and the dissemination of modern, secular knowledge. In this regard, newspapers and journals such as *Açıq Söz*, *Dirilik*, *Füyuzat*, and *Yeni Füyuzat* played an essential role in enlightening society and fostering public thought.

Through these publications, progressive ideas—such as liberty, equality before the law, education reform, women's enlightenment, and national unity—were actively promoted. Educational and cultural issues thus moved beyond intellectual debate and became matters of broad public concern.

Prominent figures including Hasan bey Zardabi, Ali bey Huseynzade, and Ahmad bey Agayev viewed education as the key to achieving social justice, progress, and freedom. Zardabi, in particular, maintained that ignorance was the primary cause of poverty and dependence, and that only education could liberate society from these conditions.

Education, Culture, and the National Liberation Movement

By the early twentieth century, the Azerbaijani enlightenment movement had acquired a distinctly political dimension. Cultural and educational institutions—schools, educational societies, charitable organizations, and the press—evolved into centers of socio-political awakening.

During this period, organizations such as *Nicat*, *Səadət*, *Nəşri-Maarif*, and *Cəmiyyəti-Xeyriyyə* were established. Their activities included founding schools, publishing textbooks, training teachers, and promoting women's education. New educational and cultural centers emerged in cities such as Baku, Ganja, Shusha, and Nakhchivan, transforming the enlightenment movement into a nationwide phenomenon.

These institutions functioned not only as centers of learning but also as spaces where national ideology was formed and refined. Many intellectuals educated within these circles later became leading political and ideological figures of the Azerbaijan Democratic Republic.

As Rasulzade emphasized in his writings on schools and madrasahs, education was expected not merely to instill loyalty to the state, but also to ensure the comprehensive cultural development of the nation. This approach marked a critical stage in the formation of Azerbaijani national ideology.

The Enlightenment Mission of the Press and the Intellectual Elite

Along with educational institutions, the press of the period played a pivotal role in shaping and guiding public consciousness. Newspapers and journals such as *Açıq Söz*, *İrşad*, *Füyuzat*, *Həyat*, and *Yeni Füyuzat* functioned as influential platforms for national awakening and intellectual debate. Through these publications, ideas related to education, cultural preservation, and national identity reached a broad audience.

Azerbaijani intellectuals—including Ömər Faiq Nemanzade, Məhəmməd Əmin Rəsulzadə, Əli bəy Hüseynzadə, and Əhməd bəy Ağayev—used the press to criticize ignorance, illiteracy, and religious dogmatism, consistently promoting science, education, and rational thought as the only viable path to social progress. Particular emphasis was placed on women's education and their role in society. In this respect, the establishment of the girls' school by Hacı Zeynalabdin Tağıyev represented a milestone in

the history of Azerbaijani education. Owing to such initiatives, Azerbaijani women had already begun to participate actively in cultural and social life by the early twentieth century.

Culture, as understood by contemporary thinkers, was a multifaceted concept in which education occupied a central position. Although education constituted an integral component of culture, it was often discussed separately due to the exceptional importance attributed to it during the years 1914–1917. During this period, Azerbaijani intellectuals were overwhelmingly preoccupied with enlightening, instructing, and educating the population. Educational issues dominated public discourse, and there existed a notable degree of unity among intellectuals regarding their urgency and significance.

This heightened concern was largely a response to the attempts by Tsarist authorities to radically restructure Muslim education in the Caucasus. Under the guise of expanding schooling, a deeply reactionary project was proposed that restricted the educational rights of Turkic peoples and violated their national interests. Particularly revealing was the deliberate designation of the Azerbaijani or Turkish language as "Tatar," a clear manifestation of imperial policy aimed at undermining national consciousness and moral foundations.

M. A. Rəsulzadə addressed this issue with remarkable clarity, emphasizing that although language alone does not constitute nationality in its entirety, it represents its most decisive element. He argued that policies designed to assimilate a nation invariably begin with the suppression of its language, seeking to erase it from collective memory (*Dirilik*, 1914, No. 6).

The origins and intent of the controversial educational project become evident through a close examination of the contemporary press, particularly Ömər Faiq's series of articles titled *"Nə umuyoruz?"* ("What Do We Expect?"). These writings reveal that Rodolev, the Caucasus Director of Public Education, sought to gather opinions on education by consulting individuals separately rather than engaging the intellectual community collectively. Ömər Faiq strongly opposed this approach, warning that such methods were harmful to national interests and advocating instead for collective discussion and decision-making (*Açıq Söz*, 1916, No. 108).

From the outset, Azerbaijani intellectuals characterized Rodolev's project as overtly reactionary and discriminatory, particularly toward Muslims and Turkic populations. The proposed three-tier school system replaced traditional educational structures and imposed Russian as the dominant language of instruction. Although the local language was formally included, it was allocated minimal instructional time and rendered effectively optional, thereby marginalizing it within the curriculum.

Even more striking was the linguistic inconsistency of the project: religious instruction was to be conducted in Arabic, explanations given in Russian or "Tatar," and most academic subjects taught exclusively in Russian. Ömər Faiq criticized this arrangement as pedagogically unsound and ideologically motivated, questioning how such a system could possibly serve the educational needs of the population (*Açıq Söz*, 1916, No. 108).

The third level of education focused on teacher training but imposed an excessively burdensome and impractical curriculum, including advanced theological disciplines such as *kalam* and *fiqh*. While these subjects held theological significance, they were of little relevance to the practical responsibilities of primary-school teachers. Ömər Faiq convincingly argued that such curricular overload would discourage learning and render the educational system ineffective.

In essence, under the pretext of educational expansion, Tsarist authorities sought to implement a policy that transformed schools from centers of enlightenment into instruments of cultural suppression. By overburdening students and marginalizing their native language, the project aimed to alienate young learners from their national and religious identity.

Despite official rhetoric emphasizing equality and justice among the empire's peoples, Azerbaijani intellectuals exposed the discrepancy between proclaimed ideals and actual practice. Through detailed comparisons, Ömər Faiq and Rəsulzadə demonstrated the preferential treatment afforded to non-Muslim populations—particularly Armenians—whose educational institutions enjoyed far greater autonomy and support. These inequalities, extensively documented in the press, underscored the systemic discrimination faced by Muslims within the imperial framework.

Rəsulzadə's writings on school and madrasa reform articulated a broader vision of education as the cornerstone of national revival. He believed that national schools should cultivate cultural awareness, historical consciousness, and a deep sense of belonging. Although constrained by political realities, he sought to utilize whatever concessions the regime permitted in order to advance the cause of national education.

In this way, education became both a means of cultural survival and a strategic instrument in the broader struggle for national self-determination.

Education, National Unity, and State Loyalty in Rəsulzadə's Thought

Rəsulzadə ultimately answered his own question regarding the mission of education by emphasizing its dual function. From his perspective, schools were expected to cultivate loyalty and attachment to the state while simultaneously acting as cultural institutions that supported the aspirations of the nation to which their students belonged (*Açıq Söz*, 1916, No. 134). Thus, the primary responsibility of schools lay in balancing state interests with national development.

However, Rəsulzadə subtly shifted this balance by assigning priority to national identity. He insisted that schools educating Muslim children must also promote the national goals articulated by the enlightened segment of the Muslim community. In this sense, schools were not merely instruments of state discipline but collaborators of the progressive Azerbaijani intelligentsia. Graduates of these institutions were expected to emerge as conscious patriots—individuals devoted to serving their people and advancing national culture.

Rəsulzadə viewed the Muslims of Russia, with minor exceptions, as belonging to a broader Turkic-Tatar cultural community. He believed that cultural progress among Muslims was impossible without a clear awareness of unity. This unity, in his view, represented the strongest cultural force available to oppressed peoples. Any initiative fostering closer ties among the Muslims of Russia deserved support, whereas policies that encouraged sectarian division were interpreted as deliberate tools of imperial domination.

Rejecting the imperial narrative that portrayed Muslim unity as a political threat, Rəsulzadə argued that efforts to overcome sectarian divisions—such as those between Sunnis and Shi'is—were cultural rather than political in nature. The fear of so-called *ittihad-i Islam* (Islamic unity), he maintained, was largely a misconception cultivated by imperial authorities (*Açıq Söz*, 1916, No. 134).

While opposing Tsarist policies aimed at fragmenting Turkic peoples through education, Rəsulzadə nevertheless regarded himself as a citizen of Russia and respected the state's overarching interests. He argued that if Russia genuinely sought to become a homeland for all its peoples, it should not fear cultural rapprochement among Turkic communities. On the contrary, such unity would strengthen the state. Conversely, the continuation of a "divide and rule" strategy would inevitably weaken both the empire and its subjects.

The relative softening of Tsarist domestic policy during this period can be explained by the gradual erosion of autocratic power. Military defeat, economic strain, and mass uprisings forced the regime to make limited concessions. Yet these concessions were largely tactical, intended to delay the collapse of the system rather than to grant genuine equality.

Rəsulzadə remained deeply critical of the educational policies implemented in the Caucasus, emphasizing that they systematically violated the national and cultural rights of Turkic peoples. He described national schools and the cultural rapprochement of Turkic communities as the "cornerstones" of national aspirations. The removal of these foundations, he warned, would inevitably lead to the collapse of popular hopes.

Tsarist authorities attempted to legitimize their restrictive policies toward Muslim schools by accusing them of promoting anti-Russian sentiment. Rəsulzadə dismissed such claims as fabrications, exposing the contradiction between official rhetoric and actual practice (*Açıq Söz*, 1916, No. 135). At the same time, he acknowledged that responsibility also lay partly with Muslim society itself, which had often neglected mosque schools and madrasas instead of reforming them. Despite their shortcomings, these institutions belonged to the nation and educated its children; abandoning them, he argued, was a grave mistake (*Açıq Söz*, 1916, No. 143).

Conclusion

The late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries represent one of the most complex and transformative periods in Azerbaijani history. During this era, the Azerbaijani people lost their political independence, were divided between empires, and subjected to colonial domination. Alongside socio-

economic exploitation, national oppression intensified. At the same time, the elimination of feudal fragmentation created favorable conditions for the development of education, culture, and economic life.

Against this background, nineteenth-century Azerbaijani intellectuals—most notably M. F. Akhundov and H. b. Zardabi—articulated a more decisive critique of despotism, clerical fanaticism, and colonial governance than their predecessors. Influenced by progressive European and Russian thought, they called for public participation in governance and the democratization of political life. Although some of their views bore utopian elements, they played a crucial role in shaping modern Azerbaijani social thought.

In the early twentieth century, Azerbaijani intellectual life became marked by ideological diversity, ranging from enlightenment and revolutionary democracy to Turkism and Bolshevism. Despite tactical differences, nearly all leading thinkers shared a commitment to national progress, cultural development, and independence.

Among the most influential representatives of Turkist ideology were Ali bey Huseynzade, Ahmad bey Agayev, and Mammad Amin Rasulzade. By synthesizing Turkism with the principles of Islamization and modernization, they transformed it into a comprehensive ideological framework that mobilized oppressed Turkic peoples. The establishment of the Azerbaijan Democratic Republic—the first parliamentary republic in the Muslim East—and the emergence of modern Turkey were tangible outcomes of this intellectual and political struggle.

Rəsulzadə went further than many of his contemporaries by critically analyzing the causes of the republic's downfall. Beyond external aggression, he highlighted internal weaknesses, political errors, and betrayal as enduring lessons. With remarkable foresight, he characterized Soviet rule as a form of "Red Imperialism," arguing that it differed little in essence from European colonialism. His early recognition of the authoritarian nature of Stalinism underscores the lasting relevance of his thought.

Many of the ideas developed by these intellectuals retain their significance today. Their socio-political views and legal-political teachings constitute some of the most valuable chapters in the history of Azerbaijani intellectual tradition and continue to offer important insights for contemporary society.

References

Azərbaycan tarixi. (1964). *Azərbaycan tarixi* (Vol. 1). Bakı.

Azərbaycan ədəbiyyatı tarixi. (1960). *Azərbaycan ədəbiyyatı tarixi* (Vol. 2). Bakı.

Afandiyev, M. (2002). *Siyasi və hüquqi təlimlər tarixi*. Bakı.

Akhundov, M. F. (1988). *Əsərləri* (Vol. 2). Bakı.

Bakikhanov, A. (1951). *Gülüstani-İrəm*. Bakı.

Behbudov, Q., & Bayramova, V. (2025). *Characteristic features of Muslim criminal law and the formation of its legislative basis* (SSRN Working Paper No. 5371898). SSRN. https://ssrn.com/abstract=5371898

Fəlsəfə ensiklopedik lüğəti. (1997). Bakı.

Huseynzade, A. b. (1996). *Qırmızı qaranlıqlar içində yaşıl işıqlar*. Bakı.

Huseynzade, A. b. (1997). *Türklər kimdir və kimlərdən ibarətdir*. Bakı.

Mammadov, K. (1975). *Gasim bəy Zakir*. Bakı.

Mammadzade, G. (1979). *M. F. Akhundov və Şərq*. Bakı.

Melikova, M. A. (n.d.). *Istoriya politiko-pravovykh ucheniy v Azerbaidzhane v XIX – nachale XX vv*. Bakı.

Melikova, M., & Bayramov, E. (1984). *Azərbaycanın ictimai nəzəriyyələr tarixi*. Bakı.

Najafov, B. (1992). *Azərbaycan Demokratik Respublikası*. Bakı.

Narimanov, N. (1971). *Məqalələr və nitqlər*. Bakı.

Narimanov, N. (2004). *Seçilmiş əsərləri*. Bakı.

Nasibzade, N. (1990). *Azərbaycan Demokratik Respublikası*. Bakı.

Öztürk, A., & Garibli, I. (2025). The characteristics of monarchy as a form of government. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum*, 2(2), 117–125.

Rasulzade, M. A. (1990). *Əsrimizin Səyavuşu*. Bakı.

Rasulzade, M. A. (1992). *Əsərləri* (Vol. 1). Bakı.

Rasulzade, M. A. (1993). *Azərbaycan Cümhuriyyəti*. Bakı.

Rustamov, Y. (2000). *İctimai təlimlər tarixi*. Bakı.

Yaqublu, N. (1991). *Məmməd Əmin Rəsulzadə*. Bakı.

Zakir, Q. b. (1953). *Əsərləri*. Bakı.

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

The Functions of Modal Verbs in French

[1] Irada Gassimova, [2] Aziza Aliyeva

Accepted: 12.20.2025
Published: 12.23.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110020

Abstract

Modal verbs occupy a central place in the grammatical system of contemporary French, as they make it possible to express the speaker's attitude toward the propositional content of an utterance. In particular, they serve to mark possibility, necessity, obligation, probability, as well as volition. This article aims to analyze the main functions of modal verbs in simple sentences in French, drawing on well-established theoretical frameworks in linguistics, notably the works of Lyons, Palmer, Le Querler, and Sweetser.

The analysis is based on a corpus of authentic examples that highlights the epistemic, deontic, dynamic, and discursive uses of the verbs *pouvoir*, *devoir*, *vouloir*, and *savoir*. The study demonstrates that the polysemy of these verbs and the diversity of their contextual values play a fundamental role in the interpretation of utterances. Finally, the article emphasizes the didactic implications of modal verb analysis, particularly in the teaching of French as a foreign language, where mastery of modal values represents a major challenge for learners' communicative competence.

Keywords: *modality, modal verbs, epistemic and deontic functions, modal interpretation*

[1] Gassimova, I. Chief Professor (Professeur en chef), Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: irade.gasimova1969@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-6187-3012

[2] Aliyeva, A. Chief Professor (Professeur en chef), Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: azizaaliyeva@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0002-9812-5006

Original research article / Originalus mokslinis straipsnis
Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis

Les Fonctions Des Verbes Modaux En Français

[1] Irada Gassimova, [2] Aziza Aliyeva

Accepted: 12.20.2025
Published: 12.23.2025
https://doi.org/10.69760/portuni.0110020

Résumé; Les verbes modaux occupent une place centrale dans le système grammatical du français contemporain, dans la mesure où ils permettent d'exprimer l'attitude du locuteur à l'égard du contenu propositionnel de l'énoncé. Ils servent notamment à marquer la possibilité, la nécessité, l'obligation, la probabilité ainsi que la volonté. Le présent article vise à analyser les principales fonctions des verbes modaux dans la phrase simple en français, en s'appuyant sur des cadres théoriques reconnus en linguistique, notamment les travaux de Lyons, Palmer, Le Querler et Sweetser. L'analyse repose sur un corpus d'exemples authentiques permettant de mettre en évidence les emplois épistémiques, déontiques, dynamiques et discursifs des verbes *pouvoir*, *devoir*, *vouloir* et *savoir*. L'étude montre que la polysémie de ces verbes et la diversité de leurs valeurs contextuelles jouent un rôle fondamental dans l'interprétation des énoncés. Enfin, l'article souligne les implications didactiques de l'analyse des verbes modaux, en particulier dans l'enseignement du français langue étrangère, où la maîtrise des valeurs modales constitue un enjeu majeur pour la compétence communicative des apprenants.

Mots-clés: *modalité, verbes modaux, fonctions épistémique et déontique, interprétation modale*

Introduction

Les verbes modaux occupent une place essentielle dans l'expression de la modalité en français. Ils permettent au locuteur de manifester son point de vue sur la réalité, d'exprimer un degré de certitude, d'imposer une obligation, d'accorder une permission ou encore d'indiquer une intention. Malgré leur rôle central dans le fonctionnement de la langue, les verbes modaux constituent une catégorie linguistique complexe et parfois ambiguë, en raison de leur polysémie et de leur comportement syntaxique particulier.

[1] Gassimova, I. Chief Professor (Professeur en chef), Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: irade.gasimova1969@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-6187-3012

[2] Aliyeva, A. Chief Professor (Professeur en chef), Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: azizaaliyeva@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0002-9812-5006

L'objectif de cette étude est d'examiner les fonctions des verbes modaux dans la phrase simple, en mettant l'accent sur leurs valeurs sémantiques, leur fonctionnement syntaxique et leur contribution à l'interprétation pragmatique de l'énoncé.

1. Cadre théorique

1.1. La notion de modalité

La modalité renvoie à l'attitude du locuteur à l'égard de son énoncé. Selon Lyons (1977), on distingue trois grands types de modalité : la modalité épistémique, qui concerne le degré de certitude ou de possibilité ; la modalité déontique, liée à l'obligation et à la permission ; et la modalité dynamique, qui exprime la capacité ou la volonté du sujet.

Dans *Les modalités en français*, Le Querler (1984) souligne que la modalité permet au locuteur d'exprimer « la représentation qu'il se fait de l'événement : son degré de réalisation, sa nécessité, sa possibilité et son caractère hypothétique ». Cette définition met en évidence le rôle central de la modalité dans la construction du sens de l'énoncé.

L'étude de la modalité trouve ses origines dans la logique modale, notamment chez Carnap (1956) et Von Wright (1951), où l'on distingue les modalités aléthiques (nécessaire / possible), déontiques (obligatoire / permis) et épistémiques (certain / probable). Ces distinctions ont largement influencé les approches linguistiques contemporaines.

Dans une perspective cognitive, Sweetser (1990) propose une typologie reposant sur trois grands domaines : la modalité racine, qui regroupe les valeurs d'obligation, de capacité et de volonté ; la modalité épistémique ; et la modalité interprétative, étroitement liée à l'acte discursif.

La modalité contribue également à définir le statut de la phrase en tenant compte de l'attitude du sujet parlant à l'égard de son énoncé et du destinataire. On distingue généralement les modalités de l'assertion, elle-même subdivisée en affirmation et négation, de l'interrogation, de l'exclamation et de l'ordre. Ces modalités peuvent se combiner dans certains cas, par exemple dans une phrase à la fois interrogative et négative, ou impérative et exclamative, bien que toutes les combinaisons ne soient pas possibles. En particulier, l'affirmation et la négation s'excluent mutuellement (Arrivé, Gadet & Galmiche, 1986, p. 390).

Les travaux de Gardies (1979, 1983) et de Blanche (1970) proposent une présentation détaillée de l'évolution historique des modalités. Selon la théorie aristotélicienne, la modalité s'exprime à travers quatre formes fondamentales : le nécessaire, le possible, l'impossible et le contingent. Ces catégories se retrouvent déjà chez Diodore Cronos, philosophe grec du IV^{e} siècle av. J.-C., qui leur attribue des définitions étroitement liées à la temporalité : le nécessaire correspond à ce qui est vrai et ne peut être faux ; le possible à ce qui est vrai ou sera vrai ; l'impossible à ce qui est faux et ne sera pas vrai ; et le contingent à ce qui est faux ou sera faux (Blanche, 1970, p. 102). Ces définitions sont également liées à la valeur de vérité des énoncés, ce qui justifie leur qualification de modalités aléthiques.

Chez les penseurs médiévaux, notamment Abélard et Thomas d'Aquin, les modalités aristotéliciennes sont largement reprises et approfondies. L'apport majeur de cette période concerne la réflexion sur la temporalité des modalités et leur articulation avec la logique et la théologie.

Dans la logique moderne, aux côtés des modalités classiques issues d'Aristote, apparaissent d'autres types de modalités, telles que les modalités épistémiques (*Il viendra peut-être*), temporelles (*Il s'est trouvé que Pierre est venu*), axiologiques (*Il serait bon que Pierre vienne*), bouliques (*Paul exige que Pierre vienne*) et érotétiques (*Est-ce que Pierre vient ?*). Dans l'orientation théorique adoptée ici, les modalités ontiques sont conservées, mais réparties dans différents domaines d'analyse. Les modalités temporelles sont considérées comme relevant de la temporalité, tandis que les modalités érotétiques sont rattachées à un type particulier d'énonciation, à savoir l'énonciation interrogative. Les modalités épistémiques, axiologiques et bouliques sont, quant à elles, intégrées au classement proposé, soit sous leur appellation traditionnelle, soit sous une terminologie équivalente.

1.2. Les modalités en linguistique française

En linguistique, les théories de la modalité s'étendent d'une conception restreinte, largement inspirée de la tradition aristotélicienne, à une conception très large selon laquelle tout énoncé est, d'une manière ou d'une autre, modalisé. Le classement adopté dans la présente étude s'inscrit dans une position intermédiaire entre ces deux orientations.

Les conceptions étroites de la modalité vont jusqu'à refuser de lui reconnaître un véritable statut linguistique ou à en limiter l'expression à un ensemble restreint de marqueurs, tels que les verbes modaux. C'est notamment le cas chez Damourette et Pichon (1911–1940), ainsi que chez Benveniste (1974, pp. 187–193), qui restreint la modalité à certaines catégories grammaticales spécifiques. À l'inverse, les conceptions larges adoptent une approche dite « modaliste », où la modalité est considérée comme omniprésente dans le langage. Cette perspective se retrouve notamment dans les travaux de Brunot (1922) et de Bally (1932).

Dans la conception traditionnelle héritée d'Aristote, on distingue les énoncés non modaux et les énoncés modaux. Les premiers correspondent aux énoncés assertoriques, relevant de l'assertion simple, tandis que les seconds se divisent en énoncés apodictiques, qui renforcent l'assertion par l'expression de la nécessité, affirmative ou négative, et en énoncés problématiques, qui l'affaiblissent en présentant l'attribution comme simplement possible ou contingente.

La notion de modalité est initialement empruntée à la logique des propositions, à travers les opérateurs modaux correspondants. En linguistique, les modalités sont généralement définies comme des moyens permettant d'exprimer l'attitude du locuteur à l'égard de son énoncé. Selon Bally, toute phrase se compose de deux éléments : le *dictum*, qui correspond au contenu propositionnel, et le *modus*, qui traduit la position du locuteur par rapport à la réalité du contenu exprimé. La modalité peut être explicite, comme dans *Il est sans doute parti*, où l'adverbe *sans doute* marque un degré de certitude, ou intégrée au dictum, comme dans *Je viendrai demain*, où le futur envisage le procès sous l'angle de la probabilité. L'absence totale de modalité correspond alors à un jugement de réalité (Meunier, 1974, p. 18).

Dans une approche énonciative, on distingue les modalités d'énonciation et les modalités d'énoncé. Les modalités d'énonciation renvoient au sujet de l'énonciation et traduisent son attitude vis-à-vis de l'allocutaire. Elles se manifestent à travers différents types de phrases : déclaratives, injonctives ou interrogatives, exprimant respectivement une affirmation, un ordre ou une question. Un même contenu propositionnel peut ainsi être associé à différentes modalités d'énonciation.

Les modalités d'énoncé, quant à elles, expriment l'attitude du locuteur à l'égard du contenu de l'énoncé et réalisent la fonction expressive au sens de Jakobson. Aux évaluations logiques classiques, limitées à la vérité, à la possibilité ou à la nécessité, s'ajoutent d'autres formes d'appréciation : l'énoncé peut être jugé certain, établi, obligatoire, permis, ou encore évalué sur le plan affectif comme utile, agréable ou souhaitable. Selon Kerbrat-Orecchioni, on distingue deux dimensions de la subjectivité : l'affectif, qui concerne l'expression des sentiments du locuteur, et l'évaluatif, qui renvoie aux jugements axiologiques (bon/mauvais) et épistémiques (vrai/faux/incertain).

Ces différentes formes de subjectivité s'expriment à travers des moyens lexicaux et syntaxiques variés, dont la délimitation demeure délicate en raison de l'implication constante du locuteur dans ses choix linguistiques. La distinction entre objectivité et subjectivité n'est d'ailleurs jamais totalement étanche. Ainsi, un adjectif apparemment objectif peut acquérir une valeur subjective en contexte (*Oh, cette voiture verte et rose !*), tout comme un nom peut être employé de manière figurée (*Ce ministre est un vrai renard*). Kerbrat-Orecchioni (1980, p. 71) souligne que les termes subjectifs se caractérisent par un sens lexical plus flou et une valeur informative accrue, dans la mesure où ils apportent des informations à la fois sur le référent et sur le locuteur.

L'expression linguistique de la subjectivité repose sur diverses catégories grammaticales : noms, adjectifs, verbes, adverbes, interjections, temps verbaux et intonation. Dans la mesure où le présent article porte sur les verbes modaux, l'analyse se concentrera prioritairement sur cette catégorie.

1.3. Les verbes modaux en français

En français, les verbes modaux comprennent principalement *pouvoir*, *devoir*, *vouloir* et *savoir* (dans ses emplois modaux), auxquels certains auteurs ajoutent *falloir* et *oser*. Ces verbes se caractérisent par une sémantique fortement dépendante du contexte, une structure syntaxique particulière reposant généralement sur la construction *verbe modal* + *infinitif*, ainsi qu'un statut intermédiaire entre les auxiliaires et les verbes lexicaux.

Les verbes *pouvoir* et *devoir* expriment respectivement deux valeurs modales fondamentales : la possibilité et l'obligation (*elle peut chanter*, *il doit partir*). Chacun de ces verbes présente toutefois une gamme étendue de nuances sémantiques. Dans l'expression de la capacité physique ou intellectuelle, *pouvoir* est fréquemment relayé par *savoir* (*je sais nager*, *je sais parler russe*). *Pouvoir* peut également exprimer la permission, notamment dans des contextes interrogatifs ou négatifs (*Est-ce que je peux poser une question ?* ; *Vous ne pouvez pas descendre du train*).

Ces deux verbes peuvent en outre recevoir une valeur épistémique et exprimer la probabilité : *pouvoir* marque alors une simple possibilité (*il peut pleuvoir*), tandis que *devoir* indique une probabilité plus forte (*il doit pleuvoir*). Dans ce sens, ils peuvent entrer en concurrence avec le verbe *aller* pour l'expression d'un procès à venir, tout en lui conférant une coloration modale spécifique.

D'autres verbes présentent également des emplois modaux. *Paraître* et *sembler* permettent d'appréhender le procès sous un angle subjectif, lié à l'impression ou à l'apparence (*il paraît dormir*, *il semble dormir*). Malgré la complexité de leur fonctionnement syntaxique, ils peuvent être assimilés à des auxiliaires modaux.

Le verbe *vouloir* exprime principalement la volition (*elle veut partir*) et correspond, sur le say plan fonctionnel, au *Modalverb* allemand *wollen*. Toutefois, à l'instar de *pouvoir* et *devoir*, il peut également concurrencer *aller* dans l'expression de l'avenir, en introduisant une valeur de volonté figurée (*ce mur veut tomber*, *cette année, il ne veut pas pleuvoir*). Dans ces emplois, la volonté et l'imminence sont étroitement liées, comme le montre également l'usage de *will* en anglais. Contrairement à *pouvoir* et *devoir*, *vouloir* peut être suivi d'une proposition complétive ou d'un complément nominal.

On peut enfin ajouter à cette liste les verbes *faire* et *laisser*, traditionnellement analysés comme des verbes introduisant une subordonnée infinitive. Ils forment avec l'infinitif une construction factitive, dans laquelle le sujet fait accomplir l'action par autrui (*César a fait construire un pont*). Avec *faire*, également qualifié de verbe causatif, le sujet est agentif, tandis qu'avec *laisser*, il ne s'oppose pas à la réalisation de l'action.

D'autres verbes, notamment lorsqu'ils sont employés à la première personne, peuvent également exprimer des valeurs modales liées aux sentiments (*aimer*, *détester*, *craindre*), à la perception (*sembler*, *paraître*), à l'opinion (*penser*, *croire*) ou au jugement de vérité (*avouer*, *prétendre*). Ces emplois confirment que la modalité ne se limite pas à un inventaire restreint de formes, mais s'inscrit dans un réseau complexe de moyens linguistiques.

2. Les fonctions des verbes modaux

Les verbes modaux assurent plusieurs fonctions fondamentales dans la phrase simple en français. Leur interprétation dépend étroitement du contexte syntaxique, sémantique et pragmatique dans lequel ils apparaissent.

2.1. La fonction épistémique

La fonction épistémique exprime le degré de certitude, de probabilité ou de possibilité qu'attribue le locuteur à la réalisation du procès. Elle repose généralement sur une inférence ou une hypothèse fondée sur des indices contextuels.

- *Il peut être malade.* → possibilité
- *Il doit être chez lui.* → forte probabilité

Dans cette fonction, *pouvoir* exprime une hypothèse faible ou une simple possibilité, tandis que *devoir* marque une inférence plus forte, proche de la certitude.

2.2. La fonction déontique

La fonction déontique concerne l'obligation, la permission ou l'interdiction. Elle renvoie à des normes sociales, morales ou institutionnelles imposées au sujet.

- *Tu dois finir ton travail.* → obligation
- *Tu peux entrer.* → permission

Dans ces emplois, les verbes modaux traduisent une contrainte ou une autorisation émanant d'une autorité explicite ou implicite.

2.3. La fonction dynamique (ou radicale)

La fonction dynamique exprime la capacité, la possibilité interne ou la volonté du sujet à accomplir une action. Elle dépend des caractéristiques intrinsèques du sujet, telles que ses aptitudes physiques, intellectuelles ou psychologiques.

- *Je peux soulever cette valise.* → capacité
- *Il veut participer.* → volonté

Contrairement à la modalité déontique, la modalité dynamique ne repose pas sur une norme externe, mais sur les propriétés propres du sujet.

2.4. La fonction axiologique ou attitudinale

Dans cette fonction, le locuteur exprime un jugement, une appréciation ou une évaluation subjective à l'égard du procès ou du comportement du sujet.

- *Tu devrais être plus prudent.* → conseil, appréciation
- *Il peut être gentil quand il veut.* → évaluation positive ou négative

Les verbes modaux contribuent ici à la dimension évaluative et affective de l'énoncé.

2.5. La fonction discursive

Les verbes modaux jouent également un rôle important dans l'organisation du discours et de l'argumentation. Ils permettent d'introduire, d'atténuer ou de renforcer un point de vue.

- *On peut dire que…*

- *On doit reconnaître que…*

Dans ces constructions, les verbes modaux participent à la structuration logique du raisonnement et à la gestion de l'implication énonciative du locuteur.

3. Analyse linguistique

Les exemples suivants illustrent la diversité fonctionnelle des verbes modaux selon le contexte :

- *Il doit être parti tôt ce matin.*
  → valeur épistémique : forte probabilité fondée sur une inférence.

- *Tu dois partir maintenant.*
  → valeur déontique : obligation imposée.

- *Je peux venir demain.*
  → valeur dynamique : capacité ou disponibilité réelle.

- *On peut conclure que la situation reste stable.*
  → valeur discursive : organisation et structuration du discours.

4. Discussion

Les verbes modaux se caractérisent par une forte polysémie : un même verbe peut assumer différentes fonctions selon le contexte. Ainsi, *devoir* oscille entre une valeur d'obligation et une valeur de probabilité, tandis que *pouvoir* peut exprimer la capacité, la permission ou l'hypothèse. Cette variabilité fonctionnelle explique en grande partie les difficultés rencontrées par les apprenants de français langue étrangère, notamment dans la distinction entre valeurs épistémiques et déontiques.

La notion de modalité regroupe des faits linguistiques hétérogènes relevant de niveaux différents, mais ayant en commun l'implication du sujet parlant dans son énoncé. Dans les textes littéraires, la subjectivité est souvent marquée par l'abondance de formes modales, comme l'illustre l'extrait suivant de Balzac (*Le Lys dans la vallée*), où les verbes modaux participent à l'expression du jugement, de l'évaluation et de l'attitude du narrateur à l'égard des personnages.

Du point de vue syntaxique, les verbes modaux remplissent également une fonction d'élargissement de la phrase. À ce sujet, Iradə Qasımova a montré le rôle des mots modaux dans l'extension de la phrase en azerbaïdjanais et en français. De la même manière, les verbes modaux enrichissent le contenu propositionnel et rendent le sens de l'énoncé plus explicite, comme dans *Il doit rester à la maison* par rapport à *Il reste à la maison*. Cette expansion se poursuit dans les temps composés : *Il a dû rester à la maison*, *Pierre a pu faire ce travail*, *Sara a voulu partir en France.*

Conclusion

Les verbes modaux jouent un rôle fondamental dans la phrase simple en français, en exprimant des valeurs complexes liées à la certitude, à l'obligation, à la capacité et à la volonté. Leur analyse met en évidence une interaction étroite entre syntaxe, sémantique et pragmatique. Une meilleure compréhension de leurs fonctions permet non seulement une description linguistique plus précise, mais contribue également à améliorer l'enseignement du français langue étrangère, en aidant les apprenants à maîtriser les subtilités de l'expression modale.

Bibliographie

Arrivé, M., Gadet, F., & Galmiche, M. (1986). *La grammaire d'aujourd'hui : Guide alphabétique de linguistique française*. Paris, France: Seuil.

Davide, J., & Kleiber, G. (Eds.). (1983). *La notion sémantico-logique de modalité* (Actes du colloque organisé par la Faculté des lettres de Metz). Paris, France: Klincksieck.

Kerbrat-Orecchioni, C. (1980). *L'énonciation : De la subjectivité dans le langage* (Chap. 2). Paris, France: Armand Colin.

Kratzer, A. (1981). The notional category of modality. In *Words, worlds, and contexts*. Berlin, Germany: De Gruyter.

Le Querler, N. (1984). *Les modalités en français*. Paris, France: Presses Universitaires de France.

Lyons, J. (1977). *Semantics* (Vol. 2). Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.

Menier, A. (1974). Modalité et communication. *La Langue française*, *(21)*, 8–25.

Palmer, F. R. (2001). *Mood and modality*. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.

Qasımova, İ. (2016). Azərbaycan və fransız dillərində sadə cümlənin modal sözlər vasitəsilə genişlənməsi. *Axtarışlar* elmi toplu, *(4)*. Naxçıvan, Azerbaijan: AMEA Naxçıvan Bölməsi, İncəsənət, Dil və Ədəbiyyat İnstitutu.

Riegel, M., Pellat, J.-C., & Rioul, R. (1994). *Grammaire méthodique du français*. Paris, France: Presses Universitaires de France.

Riegel, M., Pellat, J.-C., & Rioul, R. (2009). *Grammaire méthodique du français*. Paris, France: Presses Universitaires de France.

Sweetser, E. (1990). *From etymology to pragmatics: Metaphorical and cultural aspects of semantic structure*. Duculot.

Von Wright, G. H. (1951). *An essay in modal logic*. Amsterdam, Netherlands: North-Holland.

Editorial Team

Editorial Team – Porta Universorum

Editor-in-Chief

Hasan Alisoy – Lecturer and Senior Teacher, Nakhchivan State University

Executive Secretary

Gerda Urbaite – *Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*

Deputy Editors-in-Chief

- **Javanshir Ibrahim oghlu Zeynalov** – Doctor of Mathematical Sciences, Professor, Nakhchivan State University
- **Yagub Yagub oghlu Mammadov** – Doctor of Mathematical Sciences, Professor, Nakhchivan Teachers' Institute
- **Ilhama Mammadova** – PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Head of the Department of English Language and Translation, Nakhchivan State University
- **Leyla Safarova** – PhD in Philology, Deputy Director, Foreign Languages Center, Azerbaijan State Pedagogical University

---

Editorial Board

- **Vugar Ibrahim oghlu Salmanov** – PhD in Mathematics, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Abdulla Ismayil oghlu Hasanov** – PhD in Mathematics, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Oleksandr Kapranov -** PhD, Associate Professor, NLA University College, Oslo, Norway
- **Elshad Valiqulu oghlu Agayev** – PhD in Mathematics, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Javanshir Khudayar oghlu Guliyev** – PhD in Mathematics, NSU
- **Dashgin Alekber oghlu Seyidov** – PhD in Mathematics, NSU
- **Aygun Haji gizi Sultanova** – PhD in Physics, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Ferman Rza oghlu Gojayev** – PhD in Physics, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Naile Adem gizi Gardashbeyova** – PhD in Physics, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Nurida Yashar gizi Akbarova** – PhD in Physics, NSU
- **Billura Tavakkul gizi Hajiyeva** – PhD in Physics, NSU
- **Dashgin Shahbaz oghlu Ganbarov** – Doctor of Biological Sciences, Professor, NSU
- **Arzu Ferman oghlu Mammadov** – Doctor of Biological Sciences, Associate Professor, NSU

- **Ismayil Bagiyev oghlu Mammadov** – Doctor of Biological Sciences, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Namig Kamal oghlu Abbasov** – PhD in Biology, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Farida Akif gizi Safarova** – PhD in Biology, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Dianala M. Bernard -** Doctor of Education - Educational Leadership and Curriculum & Instruction, Faculty at University of the People, Pasadena, United States
- **Amir Karimi -** PhD in History Education, Research Lecturer in History Education with a focus on gamification, VR, AR, and Metaverse in education, Farhangian University, Alborz campus, Iran
- **Raifa Kamil gizi Salmanova** – PhD in Biology, NSU
- **Safura Rahim gizi Babayeva** – PhD in Biology, NSU
- **Turan Baymammad gizi Mammadli** – PhD in Biology, NSU
- **Ulfat Zakir oglu Ibrahim** – PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Azerbaijan University of Languages
- **Nuray Aliyeva Yadigar qizi** – Doctor of Philological Sciences, Associate Professor, AMEA Nakhchivan Branch
- **Shirmammad Qulubayli Qudrat oglu** – PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Ceyran Quliyeva Manaf qizi** – PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Elnaz Aliyeva Ali qizi** – PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Cavid Babayev Sabir oglu** – PhD in Philology, Senior Lecturer, NSU
- **Yasin Babazade Israfil oglu** – PhD in Philology, NSU
- **Leyla Zeynalova Kazim qizi** – PhD in Philology, Senior Lecturer, NSU
- **Mahsati Asgarova Qasim qizi** – PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, NSU
- **Daniel Effiong Umoh** - Department of Foreign Languages, University of Uyo, Nigeria
- **Olatunji Saheed -** Federal College of Education (Special), PMB 1089, Oyo, Oyo State, Nigeria.
- **Turkan Ismayilli Mehrac qizi** – PhD in Philology, Head of Department, NSU
- **Tehrana Khudaverdiyeva** – PhD in Philology, NSU
- **Dianala M. Bernard** – Doctor of Education, University of the People, USA
- **Maria Anna Formisano** – PhD, University of Salerno, Italy
- **Amir Karimi** – PhD in History Education, Farhangian University, Iran
- **Aydin Aliyev Arif oghlu** – PhD in Pedagogy
- **Elchin Mirzayev Elshad oghlu** – Faculty of Foreign Languages, NSU

- **Zarifa Sadig** – Faculty of Foreign Languages, NSU
- **Kovser Abbasova** – Faculty of Foreign Languages, NSU
- **Ilaha Ashrafova** – Faculty of Foreign Languages, NSU
- **Alaviyya Nuri** – Faculty of Foreign Languages, NSU
- **Daniel Effiong Umoh** – University of Uyo, Nigeria
- **Olatunji Saheed** – Federal College of Education (Special), Nigeria
- **Rashad Seyidov** – Assistant Professor, Erzurum Atatürk University, Turkey
- **Sadikhova Sayyara** – Doctor of Philosophy in Art-Criticism, NSU

Porta Universorum
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Vol. 1 No. 10 (2025): Gruodis
ISSN 3030-2234

Porta Universorum is a peer-reviewed, open-access academic journal registered and published in Lithuania. The journal provides an inclusive platform for advancing multidisciplinary research across a wide spectrum of disciplines, promoting intellectual innovation and global academic dialogue.

Porta Universorum welcomes original research, theoretical analyses, and practical insights from the following fields:

- **Natural and Life Sciences:** Biology, ecology, chemistry, physics, astronomy
- **Medical and Health Sciences:** Clinical studies, public health, medical diagnostics, healthcare innovation
- **Engineering and Applied Sciences:** Mechanical, civil, environmental, information technologies, AI, and emerging technologies
- **Economic and Social Sciences:** Economics, sociology, law, political science, management
- **Education and Pedagogy:** Teaching methodologies, curriculum design, educational technologies

- **Linguistics and Philology:** Language studies, stylistics, discourse analysis, historical linguistics
- **Humanities and Cultural Studies:** Philosophy, literature, ethics, history, anthropology, art studies
- **Mathematics and Theoretical Research**

Frequency: 12 issues per year (monthly)
Format: A4
Language: Submissions are accepted in English.
Registration: Officially registered and published in Lithuania.

All submissions undergo a rigorous double-blind peer review process to ensure academic quality and integrity.

Open Access: Articles are freely available online under a Creative Commons license to support global dissemination of knowledge.

The editorial board assumes no responsibility for the content of individual contributions. Authors are responsible for the originality of their work and for resolving any copyright matters.

For further details and submissions, visit:
🔗 **https://egarp.lt/index.php/JPURM/index**

Porta Universorum
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
Executive Secretary: Gerda Urbaite
Salomėjos Nėries g. 57, Vilnius, Lithuania
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt